

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1 **Carryover Dallas amendment = It has been a Dallas amendment previously**
2 **Carryover Dallas amendment * = June 13, 2022 amendment**
3 **New Dallas amendment**

4 **Carryover Dallas / COG amendment = item includes combination of Dallas and COG**
5 **amendments**

6 **New Dallas / COG amendment = item includes combination of Dallas and COG amendments**

7 **Carryover COG amendment**

8 **Carryover COG Amendment, updated with new COG amendment**

9 **New COG amendment**

10 **Sections including **New** – This does not mean the item is a new addition to the Code.**
11 **New amendments inserted in codes were not underlined and are underlined in this Draft.**

12

13

14

ORDINANCE NO. _____

15

An ordinance amending Chapter 53, “Dallas Building Code,” of the Dallas City Code, as amended;

16

adopting with certain changes the 2021 Edition of the International Building Code of the

17

International Code Council, Inc.; regulating the construction, enlargement, alteration, repair,

18

demolition, use, and maintenance of construction work in the city; providing a penalty not to

19

exceed \$2,000; providing a saving clause; providing a severability clause; and providing an

20

effective date.

21

BE IT ORDAINED BY THE CITY COUNCIL OF THE CITY OF DALLAS:

22

23

SECTION 1. That Chapter 53, “Dallas Building Code,” of the Dallas City Code, as

24

amended, is amended by adopting the 2021 Edition of the International Building Code of the

25

International Code Council, Inc. (which is attached as Exhibit A and made a part of this ordinance),

26

with the following amendments:

27

1. Page xix, “Legislation,” is deleted.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

28 2. Chapter 1, “Scope and Administration,” of the 2021 International Building Code is
29 deleted and replaced with a new Chapter 1, “Scope and Administration,” to read as follows:

CHAPTER 1 SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

SECTION 101 GENERAL

30
31
32
33
34
35
36 **101.1 Title.** These regulations shall be known as the *Dallas Building Code*, hereinafter referred
37 to as “this code”

38
39 **101.2 Administrative procedures.** Except as otherwise specified in this chapter, all provisions
40 of Chapter 52, “Administrative Procedures for the Construction Codes,” of the *Dallas City Code*
41 apply to this code.”

CHAPTER 2 DEFINITIONS

42
43
44
45
46 **3. That Subsection 201.3, “Terms Defined in Other Codes,” of Section 201,**
47 **“General,” of Chapter 2, “Definitions,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended**
48 **to read as follows:**

49
50 **“201.3 Terms defined in other codes.** Where terms are not defined in this code and are defined
51 in the *Dallas* [~~*International*~~] *Energy Conservation Code*, *Dallas* [~~*International*~~] *Fuel Gas Code*,
52 *Dallas* [~~*International*~~] *Fire Code*, *Dallas* [~~*International*~~] *Mechanical Code*, [~~or~~] *Dallas*
53 [~~*International*~~] *Plumbing Code* or Chapter 52, “Administrative Procedures for the Construction
54 Codes,” of the *Dallas City Code*, as amended, such terms shall have the meanings ascribed to them
55 as in those codes.”

56
57 **4. Section 202, “Definitions,” of Chapter 2, “Definitions,” of the 2021**
58 **International Building Code is amended by alphabetically adding or amending the following**
59 **definitions to read as follows:**

Carryover COG Amendment

60
61
62 **“AMBULATORY CARE FACILITY.** Buildings or portions thereof used to provide medical,
63 surgical, psychiatric, nursing or similar care on a less than 24-hour basis to ~~individuals~~ persons
64 who are rendered *incapable of self-preservation* by the services provided ~~or staff has accepted~~
65 responsibility for care recipients already incapable. This group may include, but is not limited to,
66 the following:

67 Colonic centers

68 Dialysis centers

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

69 Psychiatric centers
70 Sedation dentistry
71 Surgery centers
72

73 **Carryover COG Amendment**

74 **ASSISTED LIVING FACILITY.** A building or part thereof housing persons, on a 24-hour basis,
75 who because of age, mental disability or other reasons, live in a supervised residential environment
76 which provides personal care services. The occupants are capable of responding to an emergency
77 situation without physical assistance from staff.
78

79 **Carryover Dallas Amendment ***

80 **BUILDING SITE.** A site created in one of the ways as required by Section 51A-4.601 of the
81 Dallas Development Code.
82

83 **Carryover Dallas amendment**

84 **CODE OFFICIAL.** The *building official*.
85

86 **Carryover Dallas amendment**

87 **CONVENIENCE STAIRS.** Private circular *stairs*, other than a required *exit*, within a single
88 tenant space and complying with Section 1011.9, Exception 2. Other *stairs* may also be considered
89 convenience stairs if they are not required as *exits* and comply with all other applicable provisions
90 of this code.
91

92 **New Dallas amendment**

93 **ELECTRIC VEHICLE (EV).** An automotive-type vehicle for on-road use, such as passenger
94 automobiles, buses, trucks, vans, neighborhood electric vehicles, and electric motorcycles,
95 primarily powered by an electric motor that draws current from a building electrical service,
96 EVSE, a rechargeable storage battery, a fuel cell, a photovoltaic array, or another source of
97 electric current.
98

99 **New Dallas amendment**

100 **ELECTRIC VEHICLE SUPPLY EQUIPMENT (EVSE).** The conductors, including the
101 ungrounded, grounded, and equipment grounding conductors, and the Electric Vehicle connectors,
102 attachment plugs, and all other fittings, devices, power outlets, or apparatus installed specifically for the
103 purpose of transferring energy between the premises wiring and the Electric Vehicle.
104

105 **New Dallas amendment**

106 **EV CAPABLE SPACE.** Electrical panel capacity and space to support a minimum 40-ampere,
107 208/240-volt branch circuit for each EV parking space, and the installation of raceways, both
108 underground and surface mounted, to support the *EVSE*.
109

109 **New Dallas amendment**

110 **EV READY SPACE.** A designated parking space which is provided with one 40-ampere,
111 208/240-volt dedicated branch circuit for EVSE servicing *Electric Vehicles*. The circuit shall terminate
112 in a suitable termination point such as a receptacle, junction box, or an *EVSE*, and be located in close
113 proximity to the proposed location of the EV parking spaces. The circuit shall have no other

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

114 outlets. The service panel shall include an over-current protective device and provide sufficient
115 capacity and space to accommodate the circuit and over-current protective device and be located
116 in close proximity to the proposed location of the EV parking spaces.

117

118 **Carryover Dallas amendment ***

119 **EXISTING BUILDING.** An existing building as defined in the *Dallas Existing Building Code*
120 and buildings previously occupied as described in Section 101.4 of the *Dallas Existing Building*
121 *Code.*

122

123 **Carryover Dallas amendment ***

124 **EXISTING STRUCTURE.** An existing building as defined in the *Dallas Existing Building*
125

126

126 **Carryover Dallas amendment**

127 **EXPOSURE, (Fire).** The surrounding location at a fire incident that may be vulnerable to the fire
128 itself. It includes effects from flames, radiant heat flux, convection currents, flying brands, runoff,
129 or exposure to the harmful effects of combustion gases or smoke. The size and range of a fire
130 exposure depends on the severity of the fire causing the exposure.

131

132 **Carryover Dallas amendment**

133 **EXPOSURE PROTECTION.** A fire protection measure afforded to locations vulnerable to
134 adjacent fire hazards (radiant heat, convection currents, flying brands, explosion effects or
135 exposure to the harmful effects of combustion gases). Exposure protection may be in the form of
136 active (water sprays) or passive (separation distances, fireproofing) fire protection measures. The
137 term fire-resistive is the preferred term in the construction codes. A properly installed and
138 approved fire-resistive assembly may always be considered to provide exposure protection but all
139 types of exposure protection are not equivalent to a fire-resistive assembly.

140

141 **Carryover Dallas amendment**

142 **[BF] EXTERIOR WALL COVERING.** A material or assembly of materials applied on the
143 exterior side of *exterior walls* for the purpose of providing a weather-resisting barrier, insulation
144 or for aesthetics, including but not limited to, *veneers*, siding, *exterior insulation and finish*
145 *systems*, architectural *trim* and embellishments such as *cornices*, soffits, facias, gutters and leaders.
146 For the purpose of Chapter 14, exterior wall coverings of Group R means the surfaces of walls and
147 ceilings that are above, below, alongside or adjacent to exterior exitways, exterior stairs or exterior
148 balconies. Except for dwellings that are detached and freestanding, exterior wall covering finish
149 requirements apply to all surfaces within 10 feet (3048 mm), measured vertically or horizontally
150 in any direction of any exterior exitway, exterior stair or exterior balcony. Group R railings and
151 balustrades are included in this definition.

152

153 **Carryover Dallas amendment ***

154 **FIRE AREA, NONSPRINKLER BUILDING.** The aggregate floor area of all stories
155 enclosed and bounded by *fire walls* or *exterior walls* of a building. Areas of the building
156 excluding area increases for the automatic fire sprinkler system. Areas of the building not
157 provided with surrounding *walls* must be included in the fire area if such areas are included
158

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

159 within the horizontal projection of the roof or floor next above.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

160 Carryover Dallas amendment

161 **[BF] FIRE AREA, OCCUPANCY.** The aggregate floor area enclosed and bounded by *fire*
162 *walls, fire barriers, exterior walls or horizontal assemblies* of a building. Areas of the building
163 not provided with surrounding walls shall be included in the fire area if such areas are included
164 within the horizontal projection of the roof or floor next above.

166 Carryover Dallas amendment

167 **FIREPROOF.** Common trade name for materials used to provide resistance to a fire exposure.
168 Essentially nothing is fireproof, but some materials are resistant to the effects of a fire (heat, flame,
169 etc.) for limited periods. Independent testing agencies such as UL and NIST test submitted
170 materials for a standard fire test exposure for fireproof ratings. NFPA recommends the term fire
171 resistive in place of fireproof.
172

173 Carryover Dallas amendment

174 **FIRE WATCH.** A temporary measure intended to ensure continuous and systematic surveillance
175 of a building or portion thereof by one or more qualified standby personnel when required by the
176 fire chief, for the purposes of identifying and controlling fire hazards, detecting early signs of
177 unwanted fire, raising an alarm of fire and notifying the fire department.
178

179 Carryover Dallas / COG amendment

180 **[BG] HIGH-RISE BUILDING.** A building [~~with an occupied floor~~] having floors used for
181 human occupancy located more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above the lowest level of fire department
182 vehicle access.

184 Carryover Dallas amendment

185 **[A] HISTORIC BUILDINGS.** Buildings that are designated as historic as defined in the *Dallas*
186 *Existing Building Code*. [~~Any building or structure that is one or more of the following:~~

- 187 1. ~~Listed or certified as eligible for listing by the State Historic preservation Officer or the~~
188 ~~Keeper of the National Register of Historic Places, in the National Register of Historic~~
189 ~~Places.~~
190 2. ~~Designated as historic under an applicable state or local law.~~
191 3. ~~Certified as a contributing resource within a National Register, state designated or locally~~
192 ~~designated historic district.]~~
193

194 Carryover Dallas amendment

195 **MULTIPLE BUILDING TOWNHOUSE.** See Townhouse.

197 Carryover Dallas amendment

198 **[BG] OCCUPIABLE SPACE.** A room or enclosed space designed for human occupancy in
199 which individuals congregate for amusement, educational or similar purposes or in which
200 occupants are engaged at labor, and which is equipped with *means of egress* and light and
201 *ventilation* facilities meeting the requirements of this code. Any space that could be assumed to

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

202 be occupiable is not exempt from the requirements of this code by designing the space without a
203 means of egress, light or ventilation.

204

205 **Carryover COG Amendment, updated with new COG amendment**

206 **REPAIR GARAGE.** A building, structure or portion thereof used for servicing or repairing motor
207 vehicles. This occupancy shall also include garages involved in minor repair, modification and
208 servicing of motor vehicles for items such as lube changes, inspections, windshield repair or
209 replacement, shocks, minor part replacement and other such minor repairs.

210

211

212 **Carryover Dallas amendment**

213 **SINGLE BUILDING TOWNHOUSE.** A multiple dwelling unit located on a commercial
214 dwelling site with more than two units between exterior wall or fire walls complying with Section
215 706 in which each unit extends from foundation to roof and with a yard or public way on not less
216 than two sides.

217

218 **Carryover COG Amendment, updated with new COG amendment**

219 **[BS] SPECIAL INSPECTOR.** A qualified person employed or retained by an *approved* agency
220 who shall prove to the satisfaction of the responsible registered design professional of record and
221 [approved by] the building official as having the competence necessary to inspect a particular type
222 of construction requiring special inspection.

223

224 **Carryover COG Amendment**

225 **STANDBY PERSONNEL.** Qualified fire service personnel, approved by the fire chief. When
226 utilized, the number required shall be as directed by the fire chief.

227

228 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

229 **TOWNHOME.** A dwelling located on a single-family or duplex dwelling site and constructed in
230 a group of abutting structures separated by property lines with each dwelling extending from its
231 foundation to its roof and with a yard or public way on at least two sides.

232

233 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

234 **[A] TOWNHOUSE.** A multiple [single-family] dwelling unit located on a commercial dwelling
235 site and constructed with a maximum [in a group] of two [three or more attached] units located
236 between exterior walls or fire walls complying with Section 706 of the Dallas Building Code in
237 which each unit extends from foundation to roof and with a yard or public way on not less than
238 two sides.

239

240 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

241 **TYPE C UNIT, FHA UNIT.** A dwelling unit designed and constructed to be adaptable in
242 accordance with the Fair Housing Act Design Manual—1996 (updated 1998)

243

244

245

CHAPTER 3 OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION AND USE

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

246 **5. Paragraph 303.1.3, “Associated with Group E Occupancies,” of Subsection**
247 **303.1, “Assembly Group A,” of Section 303, “Assembly Group A,” of Chapter 3, “Use and**
248 **Occupancy Classification,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as**
249 **follows: [Carryover COG Amendment](#)**

250
251 **“303.1.3 Associated with Group E occupancies.** A room or space used for assembly
252 purposes that is associated with a Group E occupancy is not considered a separate occupancy
253 ~~except~~ when applying the assembly requirements of Chapters 10 and 11.”
254

255 **6. Subsection 304.1, “Business Group B,” of Section 304, “Business Group B,” of**
256 **Chapter 3, “Use and Occupancy Classification,” of the 2021 International Building Code is**
257 **amended to read as follows: [Carryover COG Amendment](#)**

258
259 **“304.1 Business Group B.** Business Group B occupancy includes, among others, the use of a
260 building or structure, or a portion thereof, for office, professional or service-type transactions,
261 including storage of records and accounts. Business occupancies shall include, but not be limited
262 to, the following:

263 Airport traffic control towers

264 *Ambulatory care facilities*

265 Animal hospitals, kennels and pounds

266 Banks

267 Barber and beauty shops

268 Car wash

269 Civic administration

270 *Clinic, outpatient*

271 Dry cleaning and laundries: pick-up and delivery stations and self-service

272 Educational occupancies for students above the 12th grade

273 Electronic data processing

274 Fire stations

275 Food processing establishments and commercial kitchens not associated with restaurants,
276 cafeterias, and similar dining facilities not more than 2,500 square feet (232 m²) in area.

277 Laboratories: testing and research

278 Motor vehicle showrooms

279 Police stations with detention facilities for five or less

280 Post offices

281 Print shops

282 Professional services (architects, attorneys, dentists, physicians, engineers, etc.)

283 Radio and television stations

284 Telephone exchanges

285 Training and skill development not in a school or academic program (this shall include, but
286 not be limited to, tutoring centers, martial arts studios, gymnastics and similar uses regardless
287 of the ages served, and where not classified as a Group A occupancy).”
288
289

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

290 7. Subsection [F] 307.1, “High-Hazard Group H.” of Section 307, “High-Hazard
291 Group H,” of Chapter 3, “Use and Occupancy Classification,” of the 2021 International
292 Building Code is amended to read as follows:

293 **Carryover Dallas/COG Amendments**

294 “[F] 307.1 High-hazard Group H. High-hazard Group H occupancy includes, among others, the
295 use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, that involves the manufacturing, processing,
296 generation or storage of materials that constitute a physical or health hazard in quantities in excess
297 of those allowed in *control areas* complying with Section 414, based on the maximum allowable
298 quantity limits for *control areas* set for in Tables 307.1(1) and 307.1(2). Hazardous
299 occupancies are classified in Groups H-1, H-2, H-3, H-4 and H-5 and shall be in accordance with
300 this section, the requirements of Section 415 and the Dallas [~~International~~] *Fire Code*. Hazardous
301 materials stored, or used on top of roofs or canopies shall be classified as outdoor storage or use and
302 shall comply with the Dallas [~~International~~] *Fire Code*.
303

304 [F] 307.1.1 Uses other than Group H. An occupancy that stores, uses or handles hazardous
305 materials as described in one or more of the following items shall not be classified as Group
306 H, but shall be classified as the occupancy that it most nearly resembles.
307

- 308 1. Buildings and structure occupied for the application of flammable finishes, provided
309 that such buildings or areas conform to the requirements of Section 416 of the Dallas
310 [~~International~~] *Fire Code*.
- 311 2. Wholesale and retail sales and storage of flammable and combustible liquids in
312 mercantile occupancies conforming to the Dallas [~~International~~] *Fire Code*.
- 313 3. Closed piping system containing flammable or combustible liquids or gases utilized for
314 the operation of machinery or equipment.
- 315 4. Cleaning establishments that utilize combustible liquid solvents having a flash point of
316 140°F (60°C) or higher in closed systems employing equipment *listed* by an *approved*
317 testing agency, provided that this occupancy is separated from all other areas of the
318 building by 1-hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or 1-hour
319 *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. See also
320 Chapter 12 of the Dallas Fire Code. **Carryover COG Amendment**
- 321 5. Cleaning establishments that utilize a liquid solvent having a flash point at or above
322 200°F (93°C).
- 323 6. Liquor stores and distributors without bulk storage.
- 324 7. Refrigeration systems.
- 325 8. The storage or utilization of materials for agricultural purposes on the premises.
- 326 9. Stationary storage battery systems installed in accordance with the Dallas
327 [~~International~~] *Fire Code*.
- 328 10. *Corrosive* personal or household products in their original packaging used in retail
329 display.
- 330 11. Commonly used *corrosive* building materials.
- 331 12. Buildings and structures occupied for *aerosol product* storage, aerosol cooking spray
332 products or plastic aerosol 3 products shall be classified as Group S-1, provided that
333 such buildings conform to the requirements of the Dallas [~~International~~] *Fire Code*.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 334 13. Display and storage of nonflammable solid and nonflammable or noncombustible
335 liquid hazardous materials in quantities not exceeding the maximum allowable quantity
336 per *control area* in Group M or S occupancies complying with Section 414.2.5.
337 14. The storage of black powder, smokeless propellant and small arms primers in Groups
338 M and R-3 and special industrial explosive devices in Groups B, F, M and S, provided
339 such storage conforms to the quantity limits and requirements prescribed in the Dallas
340 [~~International~~] *Fire Code*.
341 15. Stationary fuel cell power systems installed in accordance with the Dallas
342 [~~International~~] *Fire Code*.
343 16. Capacitor energy storage systems in accordance with the Dallas [~~International~~] *Fire*
344 *Code*.
345 17. Group B higher education laboratory occupancies complying with Section 428 and
346 Chapter 38 of the Dallas [~~International~~] *Fire Code*.
347 18. Distilling or brewing of beverages conforming to the requirements of the [~~International~~]
348 Dallas *Fire Code*.
349 19. The storage of beer, distilled spirits and wines in barrels and casks conforming to the
350 requirements of the [~~International~~] Dallas *Fire Code*.
351

352 **8. Subsection [F] 307.2, “Hazardous materials.” of Section 307, “High-Hazard**
353 **Group H,” of Chapter 3, “Use and Occupancy Classification,” of the 2021 International**
354 **Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

355
356 **Carryover Dallas amendment**

357 **[F] 307.2 Hazardous materials.** Hazardous materials in any quantity shall conform to the
358 requirements of this code, including Section 414, and the Dallas [~~International~~] *Fire Code*.”
359

360 **9. Paragraph 310.4.1, “Care Facilities Within a Dwelling.” of Subsection 310.4,**
361 **“Residential Group R-3,” of Section 310, “Residential Group R,” of Chapter 3, “Use and**
362 **Occupancy Classification,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as**
363 **follows:**

364
365 **Carryover Dallas amendment**

366 **“310.4.1 Care facilities within a dwelling.** Care facilities for five or fewer persons receiving
367 care that are within a single-family dwelling are permitted to comply with the Dallas One- and
368 Two-Family Dwelling [~~International-Residential~~] *Code* provided an *automatic sprinkler*
369 *system* is installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3 or Section P2904 of the Dallas One-
370 and Two-Family Dwelling [~~International-Residential~~] *Code*.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

371 Exception: A facility equivalent to a *dwelling unit* and which complies with Section
372 903.2.13 may omit the sprinkler system.”
373

374 **10. Paragraph 310.4.2, “Lodging Houses,” of Subsection 310.4, “Residential**
375 **Group R-3,” of Section 310, “Residential Group R,” of Chapter 3, “Use and Occupancy**
376 **Classification,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**
377

378 **Carryover Dallas amendment**

379 **“310.4.2 Lodging houses.** Owner-occupied *lodging houses* with five or fewer *guest rooms*
380 and 10 or fewer total occupants shall be permitted to be constructed in accordance with the
381 *Dallas One- and Two-Family Dwelling* [~~*International Residential*~~] *Code* provided an
382 *automatic sprinkler system* is installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3 or Section P2904
383 of the *Dallas One- and Two-Family Dwelling* [~~*International Residential*~~] *Code.*”
384

385 **CHAPTER 4**

386 **SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE**

387

388 **11. Subsection [F] 402.5, “Automatic Sprinkler System,” of Section 402, “Covered**
389 **Mall and Open Mall Buildings,” of Chapter 4, “Special Detailed Requirements Based on Use**
390 **and Occupancy,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

391 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

392 **“[F] 402.5 Automatic sprinkler system.** *Covered and open mall buildings* and buildings
393 connected shall be equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with
394 Section 903.3.1.1, which shall comply with all of the following:
395
396

- 397 1. The *automatic sprinkler system* shall be complete and operative throughout occupied space
398 in the *mall building* prior to occupancy of any of the tenant spaces. Unoccupied, but used
399 tenant spaces shall be similarly protected unless provided with *approved* alternative
400 protection. Protection of unoccupied and unused tenant spaces shall be subject to the
401 approval of the *building official* and the fire marshal.
- 402 2. Sprinkler protection for the *mall* of a *covered mall building* shall be independent from that
403 provided for tenant spaces or *anchor buildings*.
- 404 3. Sprinkler protection for the tenant spaces of an *open mall building* shall be independent
405 from that provided for *anchor buildings*.
- 406 4. Sprinkler protection shall be provided beneath exterior circulation balconies located
407 adjacent to an *open mall*.
- 408 5. Where tenant spaces are supplied by the same system, they shall be independently
409 controlled.

410 **Exception:** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall not be required in spaces or areas
411 of *open parking garages* separated from the *covered or open mall building* in

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

412 accordance with Section 402.4.2.3 and constructed in accordance with Section
413 406.5.”

414
415 **12. Subsection 403.1, “Applicability,” of Section 403, “High-Rise Buildings,” of**
416 **Chapter 4, “Special Detailed Requirements Based on Use and Occupancy,” of the 2021**
417 **International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

418
419 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

420 **“403.1 Applicability.** *High-rise buildings* shall comply with Sections 403.2 through 403.6.

421
422 **Exception:** The provisions of Sections 403.2 through 403.6 shall not apply to the following
423 buildings and structures:

- 424
425 1. Airport traffic control towers in accordance with Section 412.2.
426
427 2. *Open parking garages* in accordance with Section 406.5 if the open parking garage is
428 used exclusively for the parking or storage of private passenger motor vehicles or if all
429 other occupancies are located on the ground level tier only.
430
431
432 3. Open air [~~The~~] portions of [~~a~~] buildings containing a Group A-5 occupancy in
433 accordance with Section 303.6. This exception does not apply to enclosed concourses
434 or accessory uses including but not limited to sky boxes, restaurants and similarly
435 enclosed areas.
436
437 4. Special industrial occupancies in accordance with Section 503.1.1.
438
439 5. Buildings containing any one of the following:
440 5.1. A Group H-1 occupancy.
441 5.2. A Group H-2 occupancy in accordance with Section 415.8, 415.9.2, 415.9.3 or
442 426.1.
443 5.3. A Group H-3 occupancy in accordance with Section 415.8.”

444
445 **13. Subsection [F] 403.3, “Automatic Sprinkler System,” of Section 403, “High-**
446 **Rise Buildings,” of Chapter 4, “Special Detailed Requirements Based on Use and**
447 **Occupancy,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

448 **Carryover COG amendment & updated per Fire Code Amendments**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

449 “[F] **403.3 Automatic sprinkler system.** Buildings and structures shall be equipped throughout
450 with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and a secondary water
451 supply where required by Section 403.3.3.

452
453 ~~**Exception:** An automatic sprinkler system shall not be required in spaces or areas of
454 telecommunications equipment buildings used exclusively for telecommunications equipment,
455 associated electrical power distribution equipment, batteries and standby engines, provided
456 that those spaces or areas are equipped throughout with an automatic fire detection system in
457 accordance with Section 907.2 and are separated from the remainder of the building by not less
458 than 1-hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or not less than 2-hour
459 *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.]~~
460

461 [F] **403.3.1 Number of sprinkler risers and system design.** Each sprinkler system zone in
462 buildings that are more than 420 feet (128 000 mm) in *building height* shall be supplied by no
463 fewer than two risers. Each riser shall supply sprinklers on alternate floors. If more than two
464 risers are provided for a zone, sprinklers on adjacent floors shall not be supplied from the same
465 riser.

466
467 [F] **403.3.1.1 Riser location.** Sprinkler risers shall be placed in *interior exit stairways* and
468 ramps that are remotely located in accordance with Section 1007.1.

469
470 [F] **403.3.2 Water supply to required fire pumps.** In all buildings that are more than 120
471 feet (36.5 m) [~~420 feet (128 m)~~] in *building height*, and ~~buildings of Type IVA and IVB~~
472 ~~construction that are more than 120 feet (35 576 mm) in *building height*,~~ required fire pumps
473 shall be supplied by connections to no fewer than two water mains located in different streets.
474 Separate supply piping shall be provided between each connection to the water main and the
475 pumps. Each connection and the supply piping between the connection and the pumps shall
476 be sized to supply the flow and pressure required for the pumps to operate.

477
478 **Exception:** Two connections to the same main shall be permitted provided the main is
479 valved such that an interruption can be isolated so that the water supply will continue
480 without interruption through no fewer than one of the connections. The valves shall be
481 placed a distance apart not less than one half of the length of the diagonal dimension of the
482 lot or area to be served, measured in a straight line between the connections.
483

484 [F] **403.3.3 Secondary water supply.** An automatic secondary on-site water supply having a
485 capacity not less than the hydraulically calculated sprinkler demand, including the hose stream
486 requirement, shall be provided for *high-rise buildings* assigned to *Seismic Design Category C,*
487 *D, E or F* as determined by Section 1613. An additional fire pump shall not be required for the
488 secondary water supply unless needed to provide the minimum design intake pressure at the
489 suction side of the fire pump supplying the *automatic sprinkler system*. The secondary water
490 supply shall have a duration of not less than 30 minutes as determined by the occupancy hazard
491 classification in accordance with NFPA 13.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

492 [F] 403.3.4 Fire pump room. Fire pumps shall be located in rooms protected in accordance
493 with Section 913.2.1.”

494

495 Carryover Dallas Amendment

496 14. Subparagraph 403.5.3.1, “Stairway Communication System,” of Paragraph
497 403.5.3, “Stairway Door Operation,” of Subsection 403.5, “Means of Egress and
498 Evacuation,” of Section 403, “High-Rise Buildings,” of Chapter 4, “Special Detailed
499 Requirements Based on Use and Occupancy,” of the 2021 International Building Code is
500 deleted.

501 Carryover Dallas Amendment

502 15. Paragraph 403.5.4, “Smokeproof Enclosures,” of Subsection 403.5, “Means of
503 Egress and Evacuation,” of Section 403, “High-Rise Buildings,” of Chapter 4, “Special
504 Detailed Requirements Based on Use and Occupancy,” of the 2021 International Building
505 Code is amended to read as follows:

506 “403.5.4 Smokeproof enclosures. Every required *interior exit stairway* serving floors more
507 than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access shall be a
508 *smokeproof enclosure* in accordance with Sections 909.20 and 1023.12. In any building that
509 includes a *scissor stair* as described in Exception 3 of Section 1007.1.1, both exit stairs of the
510 dual enclosure structure must be a *smokeproof enclosure* or pressurized stairway in accordance
511 with Section 909.20.

512

513 Exception: *Smokeproof enclosures* or pressurized *stairs* shall not be required in non-
514 underground (see Section 405) buildings protected throughout by an approved *automatic*
515 *sprinkler system*. This exception does not apply to a *building* in which *scissor stairs* are
516 used as two exits in accordance with Section 1007.1.1. Any *smokeproof enclosures* or
517 pressurized *stairs* installed as a substitute for a requirement, a reduction of a requirement
518 or an increase in the limits of other requirements of this code is considered a required
519 system.”

520

521 Carryover Dallas amendment

522 16. Subsection [F] 404.3, “Automatic Sprinkler Protection,” of Section 404,
523 “Atriums,” of Chapter 4, “Special Detailed Requirements Based on Use and Occupancy,” of
524 the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

525 “[F] 404.3 Automatic sprinkler protection. An approved automatic sprinkler system shall be
526 installed throughout the entire building.
527

528 **Exception[s]:**

529 ~~[1. That area of a building adjacent to or above the atrium need not be sprinklered provided~~
530 ~~that portion of the building is separated from the atrium portion by not less than 2-hour~~
531 ~~fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies~~
532 ~~constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.~~
533

534 2.] Where the ceiling of the atrium is more than 55 feet (16 764 mm) above the floor,
535 sprinkler protection at the ceiling of the atrium is not required.”
536

537 **Carryover Dallas amendment**

538 **17. Subsection 404.6, “Enclosure of Atriums,” of Section 404, “Atriums,” of**

539 **Chapter 4, “Special Detailed Requirements Based on Use and Occupancy,” of the 2021**

540 **International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

541 **“404.6 Enclosure of atriums.** Atrium spaces shall be separated from adjacent spaces by a 1-hour
542 *fire barrier* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or a *horizontal assembly* constructed in
543 accordance with Section 711, or both.
544

545 **Exceptions:**

546
547 1. A *fire barrier* is not required where a glass wall forming a smoke partition is provided.
548 The glass wall shall comply with all of the following:
549

550 1.1. Automatic sprinklers are provided along both sides of the separation wall and
551 doors, or on the room side only if there is not a walkway on the atrium side.
552 The sprinklers shall be located between 4 inches and 12 inches (102 mm and
553 305 mm) away from the glass and at intervals along the glass not greater than
554 6 feet (1829 mm). The sprinkler system shall be designed so that the entire
555 surface of the glass is wet upon activation of the sprinkler system without
556 obstruction;
557

558 1.2. The glass wall shall be installed in a gasketed frame in a manner that the framing
559 system deflects without breaking (loading) the glass before the sprinkler
560 system operates; and

561 1.3. Where glass doors are provided in the glass wall, they shall be either *self-*
562 *closing* or automatic-closing.
563

564 2. A *fire barrier* is not required where a glass-block wall assembly complying with
565 Section 2110 and having a ¾-hour *fire protection rating* is provided.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

566 3. *A fire barrier is not required between the atrium and the adjoining spaces of up to three*
567 *floors of the atrium provided that such spaces are accounted for in the design of the*
568 *smoke control system and if the height of the smoke layer interface is maintained above*
569 *the minimum 6 feet as required in Section 909.8.1. Smoke control analysis must*
570 *include all relevant information including but not limited to the design fire, height of*
571 *smoke layer interface, air handler capacity in cubic feet per minute (CFM) and atrium*
572 *volume of air changes per hour (ACH) using the methods of NFPA 92.*
573

574 3.1 In other than Group R occupancies, other approaches to smoke management with
575 equivalent results may be considered with the approval of the building official
576 and the fire code official.

577 3.2 In Group R occupancies, a smoke reservoir enclosed by glass walls complying
578 with Section 404.6, Exception 1 is required to the extent that the smoke layer
579 interface drops below 6 feet in height as required in Section 909.8.1.”
580

581 4. *A fire barrier is not required between the atrium and the adjoining spaces where the*
582 *atrium is not required to be provided with a smoke control system.*

583
584 5. *A horizontal assembly is not required between the atrium and openings for escalators*
585 *complying with Section 712.1.3.*

586
587 6. *A horizontal assembly is not required between the atrium and openings for exit access*
588 *stairways and ramps complying with Item 4 of Section 1019.3*
589

590 **New COG amendment**

591 **18. Subsection 404.10, “Exit access in an Atrium,” of Section 404, “Atriums,” of**

592 **Chapter 4, “Special Detailed Requirements Based on Use and Occupancy,” of the 2021**

593 **International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

594 **“404.10 Exit stairways in an atrium.** Where an *Atrium* contains an ~~interior~~ exit access stairway
595 **all the following shall be met:**

596
597 1. The entry to the exit stairway is the edge of the closest riser of the exit stairway.

598
599 2. The entry of the exit stairway shall have access from a minimum of two directions.

600
601 3. The distance between the entire to an exit stairway in an atrium and the entrance to a
602 minimum of one exit stairway enclosed in accordance with Section 1023.2 shall comply
603 with the separation required by Section 1007.1.1.

604
605 4. Exit access travel distance shall be measured to the closest riser of the exit stairway.
606

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 607
5. Not more than 50 percent of the exit stairways shall be located in the same atrium.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

608 Carryover COG Amendment

609 19. Paragraph 406.3.3, “Carports,” of Subsection 406.3, “Private Garages and
610 Carports,” of Section 406, “Motor-Vehicle-Related Occupancies,” of Chapter 4, “Special
611 Detailed Requirements Based on Use and Occupancy,” of the 2021 International Building
612 Code is amended to read as follows:

613 “**406.3.3 Carports.** Carports shall be open on not fewer than two sides. Carports open on fewer
614 than two sides shall be considered to be a garage and shall comply with the requirements for
615 *private garages*.

616
617 **406.3.3.1 Carport separation.** A separation is not required between a Group R-3 and U
618 carport, provided the carport is entirely open on two or more sides and there are not
619 enclosed areas above.

620
621 A fire separation is not required between a Group R-2 and U carport provided that the
622 carport is entirely open on all sides and that the distance between the two is at least 10 feet
623 (3048 mm).”
624

625 Carryover Dallas Amendment*

626 20. Paragraph 406.5.2, “Openings,” of Subsection 406.5, “Open Parking
627 Garages,” of Section 406, “Motor-Vehicle-Related Occupancies,” of Subchapter 4, “Special
628 Detailed Requirements Based on Use and Occupancy,” of the 2021 International Building
629 Code is amended to read as follows:

630 “**406.5.2 Openings.** For natural *ventilation* purposes, the exterior side of the structure shall
631 have uniformly distributed openings on two or more sides. The area of such openings in
632 *exterior walls* on a tier shall not be less than 20 percent of the total perimeter wall area of each
633 tier. The aggregate length of the openings considered to be providing natural *ventilation* shall
634 not be less than 40 percent of the perimeter of the tier. Interior walls shall not be less than 20
635 percent open with uniformly distributed openings. Use of screens are permissible if
636 calculations are provided that demonstrate no loss in minimum area of openings.
637

638 **Exception:** Openings are not to be distributed over 40 percent of the building perimeter
639 where the required openings are uniformly distributed over two opposing sides of the
640 buildings.

641
642 **406.5.2.1 Openings below grade.** Where openings below grade provide required natural
643 *ventilation*, the outside horizontal clear space shall be one and one-half times the depth of

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

644 the opening. The width of the horizontal clear space shall be maintained from grade down
645 to the bottom of the lowest required opening.”

647 **Carryover Dallas amendment**

648 **21. Paragraph 406.5.5, “Area and Height Increases,” of Subsection 406.5, “Open**
649 **Parking Garages,” of Section 406, “Motor-Vehicle-Related Occupancies,” of Chapter 4,**
650 **“Special Detailed Requirements Based on Use and Occupancy,” of the 2021 International**
651 **Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

652
653 **“406.5.5 Area and height increases.** The allowable area and height of *open parking garages*
654 shall be increased in accordance with the provisions of this section. Garages with sides open
655 on three-fourths of the building’s perimeter are permitted to be increased by 25 percent in area
656 and one tier in height. Garages with sides open around the entire building’s perimeter are
657 permitted to be increased by 50 percent in area and one tier in height. For a side to be
658 considered open under the above provisions, the total area of openings along the side shall not
659 be less than 50 percent of the interior area of the side at each tier and such openings shall be
660 equally distributed along the length of the tier. For purposes of calculating the interior area of
661 the side, the height shall not exceed 7 feet (2134 mm).

662
663 Allowable tier areas in Table 406.5.4 shall be increased for *open parking garages*
664 constructed to heights less than the table maximum. The gross tier area of the garage shall not
665 exceed that permitted for the higher structure. No fewer than three sides of each such larger
666 tier shall have continuous horizontal openings not less than 30 inches (762 mm) in clear height
667 extending for not less than 80 percent of the length of the sides and no part of such larger tier
668 shall be more than 200 feet (60 960 mm) horizontally from such an opening. In addition, each
669 such opening shall face a street or *yard* with access to a street with a width of not less than 30
670 feet (9144 mm) for the full length of the opening, and *standpipes* shall be provided in each
671 such tier.

672
673 *Open parking garages* of Type II construction, with all sides open, shall be unlimited in
674 allowable area where the *building height* does not exceed 75 feet (22 860 mm). For a side to
675 be considered open, the total area of openings along the side shall not be less than 50 percent
676 of the interior area of the side at each tier and such openings shall be equally distributed along
677 the length of the tier. For purposes of calculating the interior area of the side, the height shall
678 not exceed 7 feet (2134 mm). All portions of tiers shall be within 200 feet (60 960 mm)
679 horizontally from such openings or other natural *ventilation* openings as defined in Section
680 406.5.2. These openings shall be permitted to be provided in *courts* with a minimum dimension
681 of 20 feet (6096 mm) for the full width of the openings.

682
683 All portions of the open parking garage must be within 130 feet of a standpipe to satisfy Fire
684 Department access requirements.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

685 **Exception:** Where a building is equipped throughout with an *approved automatic*
686 *sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, standpipes may be omitted in
687 accordance with Section 905.”
688

689 **22. Subsection 406.8, “Repair Garages,” of Section 406, “Motor-Vehicle-Related**
690 **Occupancies,” of Chapter 4, “Special Detailed Requirements Based on Use and Occupancy,”**
691 **of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

692
693 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

694 **“406.8 Repair garages.** Repair garages shall be constructed in accordance with the *Dallas*
695 *[International] Fire Code* and Sections 406.2 and 406.8. This occupancy shall include uses as
696 defined in Section 202. This occupancy shall not include motor fuel-dispensing facilities, as
697 regulated in Section 406.7.

698
699 **406.8.1 Ventilation.** Repair garages shall be mechanically ventilated in accordance with the
700 *Dallas [International] Mechanical Code*. The *ventilation* system shall be controlled at the
701 entrance to the garage.

702
703 **[F] 406.8.2 Gas detection system.** Repair garages used for the repair of vehicles fueled by
704 non-odorized gases including but not limited to hydrogen and non-odorized LNG, shall be
705 provided with a gas detection system that complies with Section 916. The gas detection system
706 shall be designed to detect leakage of non-odorized gaseous fuel. Where lubrication or chassis
707 service pits are provided in garages used for repairing non-odorized LNG-fueled vehicles, gas
708 sensors shall be provided in such pits.

709
710 **[F] 406.8.2.1 System activation.** Activation of gas detection alarm shall result in all of
711 the following:

- 712 1. Initiation of distinct audible and visual alarm signals in the repair garage, where the
713 ventilation system is interlocked with gas detection.
714 2. Deactivation of all heating systems located in the repair garage.
715 3. Activation of the mechanical ventilation system, where the system is interlocked
716 with gas detection.

717
718 **[F] 406.8.2.2 Failure of the gas detection system.** Failure of the gas detection system
719 shall automatically deactivate the heating system, activate the mechanical ventilation
720 system where the system is interlocked with the *gas detection system*, and cause a trouble
721 signal to sound in an approved location.

722
723 **[F] 406.8.3 Automatic sprinkler system.** A repair garage shall be equipped with an *automatic*
724 *sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.2.9.1.”

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

725 Carryover Dallas Amendment

726 23. Subsection [F] 411.2, “Automatic Sprinkler System,” of Section 411, “Special
727 Amusement Buildings,” of Chapter 4, “Special Detailed Requirements Based on Use and
728 Occupancy,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:

729 “[F] 411.2 Automatic sprinkler system. Buildings containing *special amusement areas* shall be
730 equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
731 Where the *special amusement area* is temporary, the sprinkler water supply shall be of an *approved*
732 temporary means.

733
734 **Exception:** *Automatic sprinklers* are not required where the total floor area of a temporary
735 *special amusement area* is less than 7,500 [1,000] square feet (690 [93] m²), ~~and~~ the *exit*
736 *access travel* distance from any point to an exit is less than 50 feet (15 240 mm) and the
737 temporary use does not exceed 30 days in any 12-month period.
738

739 Carryover Dallas Amendment

740 24. Subsection 420.2, “Separation Walls,” of Section 420, “Groups I-1, R-1, R-2,
741 R-3 and R-4,” of Chapter 4, “Special Detailed Requirements Based on Use and Occupancy,”
742 of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:

743 “420.2 Separation walls. Walls separating *dwelling units* in the same building, walls separating
744 *sleeping units* in the same building and walls separating *dwelling* or *sleeping units* from other
745 occupancies contiguous to them in the same building shall be constructed as *fire partitions* in
746 accordance with Section 708. Walls separating *dwelling* or *sleeping units* from portions of the
747 same occupancy contiguous to them, but not part of the same *dwelling* or *sleeping units*, shall be
748 constructed as *fire partitions* in accordance with Section 708.”
749

750 Carryover Dallas Amendment

751 25. Subsection 420.3, “Horizontal Separation,” of Section 420, “Groups I-1, R-1,
752 R-2, R-3 and R-4,” of Chapter 4, “Special Detailed Requirements Based on Use and
753 Occupancy,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:

754 “420.3 Horizontal separation. Floor assemblies separating *dwelling units* in the same buildings,
755 floor assemblies separating *sleeping units* in the same building and floor assemblies separating
756 *dwelling* or *sleeping units* from other occupancies contiguous to them in the same building shall
757 be constructed as *horizontal assemblies* in accordance with Section 711. Floor assemblies
758 separating *dwelling* or *sleeping units* from portions of the same occupancy contiguous to them, but
759 not part of the same *dwelling* or *sleeping units*, shall be constructed as horizontal assemblies in
760 accordance with Section 711.”

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

New COG Amendment

761 **26. Subsection 423.5.1, “Required Occupant Capacity,” of Section 423.5, “Group**
762 **E Occupancy” of Section 423 “Storm Shelter” of Chapter 4, “Special Detailed Requirements**
763 **Based on Use and Occupancy,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read**
764 **as follows:**

766 **“423.5.1 Required Occupant capacity.** The required occupant capacity of the *storm shelter* shall
767 include all of the buildings on the site and shall be the ~~greater of the following:~~
768

- 769 1. ~~The~~ *Total occupant load* of the classrooms, vocational rooms and offices in the
770 Group E occupancy.
- 771 2. ~~The~~ *Occupant load* of the largest indoor assembly space that is associated with the
772 ~~group E occupancy.~~
773

Exceptions:

- 774 1. Where a new building is being added on an existing Group E site, and where the new
775 building is not of sufficient size to accommodate the required occupant capacity of the
776 *storm shelter* for all of the buildings on the site, the *storm shelter* shall at a minimum
777 accommodate the required occupant capacity for the new building.
- 778 2. Where approved by the *building official* the required occupant capacity of the shelter
779 shall be permitted to be reduced by the occupant capacity of any existing *storm shelter*
780 on the site.
- 781 3. Where approved by the building official, the actual number of occupants for whom
782 each occupied space, floor or building is designed, although less than those determined
783 by occupant load calculation, shall be permitted to be used in the determination of the
784 required design occupant capacity for the storm shelter.
785
786
787
788
789

Carryover Dallas Amendment

790 **27. Chapter 4, “Special Detailed Requirements Based on Use and Occupancy,” of**
791 **the 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new Section 429, “Aircraft**
792 **Noise Attenuation Requirements,” to read as follows:**

793 **429.1 Definitions.** The following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this chapter, and as
794 used elsewhere in this code, have the meanings shown herein.
795
796

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

797 **A-WEIGHTED SOUND LEVEL.** An A-weighted sound level is a sound level in the 1,000 to
798 6,000 Hz frequency range that is increased by 10 dB if the noise event occurs between 10:00 p.m.
799 and 7:00 a.m. The A-weighted sound level reflects the greater intrusiveness of sounds that the ear
800 perceives as louder compared to other frequencies. “dBA” or “dB(A)” indicate a sound level
801 measurement has been A-weighted.
802

803 **DAY-NIGHT AVERAGE SOUND LEVEL.** The day-night average sound level is the noise
804 exposure in areas around airports (abbreviated as “DNL” in text and “L_{dn}” in equations). DNL is
805 a measure of the average A-weighted sound level of all aircraft flights occurring in a 24-hour
806 period.
807

808 **429.2 Aircraft noise zone.** All land with a DNL noise contour of 65 dBA or greater, as shown on
809 the aircraft noise maps available for review at the Division of Building Inspection, is subject to
810 these regulations. A building that is only partly located within an aircraft noise zone is also subject
811 to these regulations.
812

813 **429.3 Noise insulation.**

814

815 **429.3.1 Certification of plans prior to issuance of building permit.** A registered Texas
816 engineer who has demonstrable knowledge of acoustical engineering shall certify that the plans
817 and specifications comply with the noise insulation standards of Section 429.3.2. The *building*
818 *official* shall not issue a building permit for any *building* within an aircraft noise zone unless
819 the plans and specifications for the *building* meet the noise insulation standards of Section
820 429.3.2.
821

822 **Exception:** The plans and specifications may be prepared and certified by a member of
823 the National Council of Acoustical Consultants or another organization approved by the
824 *building official.*
825

826 **429.3.2 Noise insulation standards.** New *buildings* of the following occupancies shall be
827 constructed with sound insulation or other means to achieve a DNL of 45 dBA or less inside
828 the *building*: Group E occupancies; Group I-1, I-2 and I-4 occupancies; and Group R
829 occupancies. If the cost of modifications to an existing *building* is 75 percent or more of the
830 total assessed improvement value of the site, the *building* shall also meet this standard. Garages
831 and similar accessory buildings that do not include living space are exempt from this
832 requirement.”
833

834 **New Dallas Amendment**

835 **28. Chapter 4, “Special Detailed Requirements Based on Use and Occupancy,”**
836
837 **of the 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new Section 430, “Electric**
838 **Vehicle Charging Facilities,” to read as follows:**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

430.1. Electric Vehicle (EV) charging for new construction. New construction shall facilitate future installation and use of *Electric Vehicle Supply Equipment (EVSE)* in accordance with the NFPA 70.

430.1.1. New commercial buildings. *EV Ready Spaces* and *EV Capable Spaces* shall be provided in accordance with Table 430.1.1. Where the calculation of percent served results in a fractional parking space, it shall be rounded up to the next whole number. The service panel or sub panel circuit directory shall identify the spaces reserved to support EV charging as “EV Capable” or “EV Ready”. The raceway location shall be permanently and visibly marked as “EV Capable”.

Where more than one parking facility is provided on a site, electric vehicle ready parking spaces shall be calculated separately for each parking facility. The service panel or subpanel circuit directory shall identify the spaces reserved to support EV charging as “EV-Capable” or “EV-Ready”. The raceway location for *EV-Capable Spaces* shall be permanently and visibly marked as “EV-Capable”.

TABLE 430.1.1.
EV READY SPACE AND EV CAPABLE SPACE REQUIREMENTS^a

Total Number of Parking Spaces	Minimum number of EV Ready Spaces	Minimum number of EV Capable Spaces
1	1	NA
2 – 10	2	NA
11 – 15	2	3
16 – 19 20	2	4
21 – 25	2	5
26+	2	20% of total parking spaces

a. Where EV-Ready Spaces installed exceed the required values in Table 430.1.1 the additional spaces shall be deducted from the EV-Capable Spaces requirement.

430.1.2. Identification. Construction documents shall indicate the raceway termination point and proposed location of future EV spaces and EV chargers. Construction documents shall also provide information on amperage of future *EVSE*, raceway methods, wiring schematics and electrical load calculations to verify that the electrical panel service capacity and electrical system, including any on-site distribution transformers, have sufficient capacity to simultaneously charge all EVs at all required EV spaces at the full rated amperage of the *EVSE*.

CHAPTER 5 GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHTS AND AREAS

New COG amendment

29 Section 503.1, “General,” of Section 503, “General Building Height and Area limitations,” of Chapter 5, “General Building Heights and Areas,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

873 “**503.1 General.** Unless otherwise specifically modified in Chapter 4 and this chapter, *building*
 874 *height*, number of *stories* and *building area* shall not exceed the limits specified in Sections 504
 875 and 506 based on the type of construction as determined by Section 602 and the occupancies as
 876 determined by Section 302 except as modified hereafter. *Building height*, number of *stories* and
 877 *building area* provisions shall be applied independently. For the purposes of determining area
 878 limitations, height limitations and type of construction, each portion of a building separated by
 879 one or more *fire walls* complying with Section 706 shall be considered to be a separate building.
 880 Where a building contains more than one distinct type of construction, the building shall comply
 881 with the most restrictive area, height, and stories, for the lesser type of construction or be separated
 882 by fire walls, except as allowed in Section 510.
 883

884 **503.1.1- Special industrial occupancies.** Buildings and structures designed to house
 885 special industrial processes that require large areas and unusual *building heights* to accommodate
 886 craneways or special machinery and equipment, including, among others, rolling mills; structural
 887 metal fabrication of electric, gas or steam power, shall be exempt from the *building height*, number
 888 of *stories* and *building area* limitations specified in Section 504 and 506.
 889

890 **Carryover Dallas Amendment. Updated with new Types of Construction.**

891 **30 Table 504.4, “Allowable Number of Stories Above Grade Plane,” of Subsection**
 892 **504.4, “Number of Stories,” of Section 504, “Building Height and Number of Stories,” of**
 893 **Chapter 5, “General Building Heights and Areas,” of the 2021 International Building Code**
 894 **is amended to read as follows:**

895 “TABLE 504.4
 896 ALLOWABLE NUMBER OF STORIES ABOVE GRADE PLANE^{a, b}

OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION	TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION												
	SEE FOOTNOTS	TYPE I		TYPE II		TYPE III		TYPE IV				TYPE V	
		A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B		HT	A	B
A-1	NS	UL	5	3	2	3	2	3	3	3	3	2	1
	S	UL	6	4	3	4	3	9	6	4	4	3	2
A-2	NS	UL	11	3	2	3	2	3	3	3	3	2	1
	S	UL	12	4	3	4	3	18	12	6	4	3	2
A-3	NS	UL	11	3	2	3	2	3	3	3	3	2	1
	S	UL	12	4	3	4	3	18	12	6	4	3	2
A-4	NS	UL	11	3	2	3	2	3	3	3	3	2	1
	S	UL	12	4	3	4	3	18	12	6	4	3	2
A-5	NS	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	1	1	1	UL	UL	UL
	S	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL
B	NS	UL	11	5	3	5	3	5	5	5	5	3	2
	S	UL	12	6	4	6	4	18	12	9	6	4	3
E ^{1,2}	NS	UL	5	3	2	3	2	3	3	3	3	1	1
	S	UL	6	4	3	4	3	9	6	4	4	2	2

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

897

F-1	NS	UL	11	4	2	3	2	3	3	3	4	2	1
	S	UL	12	5	3	4	3	10	7	5	5	3	2
F-2	NS	UL	11	5	3	4	3	5	5	5	5	3	2
	S	UL	12	6	4	5	4	12	8	6	6	4	3
H-1	NS ^{c, d}		1	1	1	1	1	NP	NP	NP	1	1	NP
	S							1	1	1			
H-2	NS ^{c, d}	UL	3	2	1	2	1	1	1	1	2	1	1
	S							2	2	2			
H-3	NS ^{c, d}	UL	6	4	2	4	2	3	3	3	4	2	1
	S							4	4	4			
H-4	NS ^{c, d}	UL	7	5	3	5	3	5	5	5	5	3	2
	S	UL	8	6	4	6	4	8	7	6	6	4	3
H-5	NS ^{c, d}		4	4	3	3	3	2	2	2	3	3	2
	S							3	3	3			
I-1 Condition 1	NS ^{d, e}	UL	9	4	3	4	3	4	4	4	4	3	2
	S	UL	10	5	4	5	4	10	7	5	5	4	3
I-1 Condition 2	NS ^{d, e}	UL	9	4	3	4	3	3	3	3	4	3	2
	S	UL	10	5				10	6	4			
I-2	NS ^{d, f}	UL	4	2	1	1	NP	NP	NP	NP	1	1	NP
	S	UL	5	3				1	1	1			
I-3	NS ^{d, e}	UL	4	2	1	2	1	2	2	2	2	2	1
	S	UL	5	3	2	3	2	7	5	3	3	3	2
I-4	NS ^{d, g}	UL	5	3	2	3	2	3	3	3	3	1	1
	S	UL	6	4	3	4	3	9	6	4	4	2	2
M	NS	UL	11	4	2	4	2	4	4	4	4	3	1
	S	UL	12	5	3	5	3	12	8	6	5	4	2
R-1 ^h	NS ^d	UL	11	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	3	2
	S13R		4	4								4	3
	S	UL	12	5	5	5	5	18	12	8	5	4	3
R-2 ^h	NS ^d	UL	11	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	3	2
	S13R		4	4	4							4	3
	S	UL	12	5	5	5	5	18	12	8	5	4	3
R-3 ^h	NS ^d	UL	11	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	3	3
	S13R		4	4								4	4
	S	UL	12	5	5	5	5	18	12	5	5	4	4
R-4 ^h	NS ^d	UL	11	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	3	2
	S13R		4	4								4	3
	S	UL	12	5	5	5	5	18	12	5	5	4	3
S-1	NS	UL	11	4	2	3	2	4	4	4	4	3	1
	S	UL	12	5	3	4	3	10	7	5	5	4	2
S-2	NS	UL	11	5	3	4	3	4	4	4	4	4	2
	S	UL	12	6	4	5	4	12	8	5	5	5	3
U	NS	UL	5	4	2	3	2	4	4	4	4	2	1
	S	UL	6	5	3	4	3	9	6	5	5	3	2

898

899
900
901
902
903

Note: UL = Unlimited; NP = Not Permitted; NS = Buildings not equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system; S = Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1; S13R = Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2; S13D = Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 904 a. See Chapters 4 and 5 for specific exceptions to the allowable height in this chapter.
905 b. See Section 903.2 for the minimum thresholds for protection by an automatic sprinkler system for specific
906 occupancies.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 907 c. New Group H occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with
908 Section 903.2.5.
909 d. The NS value is only for use in evaluation of existing building height in accordance with the *Dallas*
910 [*International*] *Existing Building Code*.
911 e. New Group I-1 and I-3 occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance
912 with Section 903.2.6. For new Group I-1 occupancies, Condition 1, see Exception 1 of Section 903.2.6.
913 f. New and existing Group I-2 occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in
914 accordance with Section 903.2.6 and Section 1103.5 of the *Dallas* [*International*] *Fire Code*.
915 g. For new Group I-4 occupancies, see Exceptions 2 and 3 of Section 903.2.6.
916 h. New Group R occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with
917 Section 903.2.8.
918 i. For Group E occupancies and rooms normally occupied by pre-kindergarten, kindergarten, or first grade
919 students.
920 j. For Group E child day care facilities see Section 308.5.1. All other child day care facilities must comply with
921 the I-4 provisions of this code.”
922

New COG amendment

923 **31 Table 506.2, “Allowable Area Factor (At = NS, S1, S13R, S13D or SM, as**
924 **applicable) in square feet,” of Subsection 506.2, “Allowable area determination,” of**
925 **Section 506, “Building Area,” of Chapter 5, “General Building Heights and Areas,”**
926 **of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**
927

- 928 ~~i. The maximum allowable area for single story nonsprinklered Group U greenhouse is~~
929 ~~permitted to be 9,000 square feet, or the allowable area shall be permitted to comply~~
930 ~~with Table C102.1 or Appendix C.~~
931

Carryover COG Amendment

932 **32. Paragraph 506.3.1, “Minimum Percentage of Perimeter,” of Subsection 506.3,**
933 **“Frontage Increase,” of Section 506, “Building Area,” of Chapter 5, “General Building**
934 **Heights and Areas,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**
935

936 **“506.3.1 Minimum percentage of perimeter.** To qualify for an area factor increase based on
937 frontage, a building shall have not less than 25 percent of its perimeter on a *public way* or open
938 space. Such open space shall be either on the same lot or dedicated for public use and shall be
939 accessed from a street or approved *fire lane*. In order to be considered as accessible, if not in
940 direct contact with a street or fire lane, a minimum 10-foot wide pathway meeting the
941 requirements for fire department access from the street or an approved fire lane shall be
942 provided for hose lay measurement pathway requirements.”
943
944

Carryover Dallas Amendment*

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

946 **33. Subsection 507.3, “Nonsprinklered, One-Story Buildings,” of Section 507,**
947 **“Unlimited Area Buildings,” of Chapter 5, “General Building Heights and Areas,” of the**
948 **2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

949 **“507.3 [~~Nonsprinklered,~~] O [e]ne-story buildings.** The area of a Group F-2 or S-2 building
950 not more than one *story* in height shall not be limited where the building is surrounded and
951 adjoined by *public ways* or *yards* not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width. Sprinklers shall
952 be provided as per this code.”
953

954 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

955 **29. Subsection 507.4, “Sprinklered, One-Story Buildings,” of Section 507,**
956 **“Unlimited Area Buildings,” of Chapter 5, “General Building Heights and Areas,” of the**
957 **2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

958 **“507.4 Sprinklered, one-story buildings.** The area of a Group A-4 building no more than one
959 *story above grade plane* of other than Type V construction, or the area of a Group B, F, M or S
960 building no more than one *story above grade plane* of any construction type, shall not be limited
961 where the building is provided with an *automatic sprinkler system* throughout in accordance with
962 Section 903.3.1.1 and is surrounded and adjoined by *public ways* or *yards* not less than 60 feet (18
963 288 mm) in width.
964

965 **Exceptions:**

- 966
- 967 4. Buildings and structures of Type I and II construction for rack storage facilities that do
968 not have access by the public shall not be limited in height, provided that such buildings
969 conform to the requirements of Sections 507.4 and 903.3.1.1 and Chapter 32 of the
970 Dallas [~~International~~] Fire Code.
971
 - 972 5. The *automatic sprinkler system* shall not be required in areas occupied by athletes
973 during their competitive event for indoor participant sports, such as tennis, skating,
974 swimming and equestrian activities in occupancies in Group A-4, provided that:
975
 - 976 5.1. *Exit* doors directly to the outside are provided for occupants of the participant
977 sports areas; and
 - 978
 - 979 5.2. The building is equipped with a *fire alarm system* with *manual fire alarm boxes*
980 installed in accordance with Section 907.
 - 981
 - 982 5.3. An *automatic sprinkler system* is provided in storage rooms, press boxes,
983 concession booths or other spaces ancillary to the sport activity spaces.

984 **Carryover Dallas Amendment, Division 2 and 3 removed per June 13, 2022 amendments.**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

985 **34. Section 507, “Unlimited Area Buildings,” of Chapter 5, “General Building**
986 **Heights and Areas,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new**
987 **Subsection 507.14, “Unlimited Area Based on Types of Construction,” to read as follows:**

988 **“507.14 Unlimited area based on types of construction. The area of any five-story or less Type**
989 **IIA, three-story or less Type IIB, or three-story or less Type IV building, except one housing Group**
990 **H occupancies, is unlimited if the building is provided with an *approved automatic sprinkler***
991 ***system* throughout as specified in Chapter 9. These provisions do not apply to *covered and open***
992 ***mall buildings, anchor buildings, or motion picture theaters.***
993

994 **Exception: Unlimited area buildings may house Group H Occupancies as specified in Section**
995 **507.8.”**
996

997 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

998 **35. Paragraph 508.2.3, “Allowable Building Area,” of Subsection 508.2,**
999 **“Accessory Occupancies,” of Section 508, “Mixed Use and Occupancy,” of Chapter 5,**
1000 **“General Building Heights and Areas,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended**
1001 **to read as follows:**

1002 **“508.2.3 Allowable building area. The allowable area of the building shall be based on the**
1003 **applicable provisions of Section 506 for the main occupancy of the building. Aggregate**
1004 **accessory occupancies shall not occupy more than 10 percent of the floor area of the story in**
1005 **which they are located and shall not exceed the tabular values for non-sprinklered buildings in**
1006 **Table 506.2 for each such accessory occupancy.**
1007

1008 **Exception: Aggregate accessory occupancies in a building provided throughout with an**
1009 ***approved automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 shall not occupy**
1010 **more than 20 percent of the area of the story in which they are located and shall not exceed**
1011 **the tabular values in Table 506.2 without *building area* increases in accordance with**
1012 **Section 506 for such accessory occupancies.”**
1013

1014 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

1015 **36. Subsection 510.2, “Horizontal Building Separation Allowance,” of Section 510,**
1016 **“Special Provisions,” of Chapter 5, “General Building Heights and Areas,” of the 2021**
1017 **International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

1018 **“510.2 Horizontal building separation allowance. A building shall be considered as separate**
1019 **and distinct buildings for the purpose of determining area limitations, continuity of *fire walls,***
Amend Chapter 53 (adopt 2021 International Building Code) – Page 30 **Updated September 28, 2022**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1020 limitation of number of *stories* and type of construction where all of the following applicable
1021 conditions are met:

1022
1023 1. The buildings are separated with a *horizontal assembly* having a *fire-resistance rating* of
1024 not less than 3 hours. Where vertical offsets are provided as part of a horizontal assembly,
1025 the vertical offset and the structure supporting the vertical offset shall have a *fire-resistance*
1026 *rating* of not less than 3 hours. In a structure protected throughout both above and below
1027 the *horizontal assembly* with an *approved automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with
1028 Section 903.3.1.1, the *horizontal assembly* may be of a minimum 2-hour *fire-resistance*
1029 *rating*.

1030
1031 2. The building below the *horizontal assembly* is of Type IA construction.

1032
1033 3. *Shaft, stairway, ramp* and escalator enclosures through the *horizontal assembly* shall have
1034 not less than a 2-hour *fire-resistance rating* with opening protectives in accordance with
1035 Section 716.

1036
1037 **Exception:** Where the enclosure walls below the *horizontal assembly* have not less than
1038 the [a 3-hour] *fire-resistance rating* as required by Condition 1 with opening protectives
1039 in accordance with Section 716, the enclosure walls extending above the *horizontal*
1040 *assembly* shall be permitted to have a 1-hour *fire-resistance rating*, provided the following
1041 conditions are met:

1042
1043 1. The building above the *horizontal assembly* is not required to be of Type I
1044 construction;
1045 2. The enclosure connects fewer than four *stories*; and
1046 3. The enclosure opening protectives above the *horizontal assembly* have a *fire*
1047 *protection rating* of not less than 1 hour.

1048
1049 4. *Interior exit stairway* located within the Type IA building are permitted to be of
1050 combustible materials where the following requirements are met:

1051
1052 4.1. The building above the Type IA building is of Type III, IV, or V construction.

1053
1054 4.2. The *stairway* located in the Type IA building is enclosed by 3-hour fire-resistance-
1055 rated construction with opening protective in accordance with Section 716.

1056
1057 5. The building or buildings above the *horizontal assembly* shall be permitted to have multiple
1058 Group A occupancy uses, each with an *occupant load* of less than 300, or Group B, M, R
1059 or S occupancies.

1060
1061 6. The building below the *horizontal assembly* shall be protected throughout by an *approved*
1062 *sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, and shall be permitted to be any
1063 occupancy allowed by this code except Group H.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1064 6. The maximum *building height* in feet (mm) shall not exceed the limits set forth in Section
 1065 504.3 for the building having the smaller allowable height as measured from the *grade*
 1066 *plane.*”

1067
 1068 **37. Chapter 5, “General Building Heights and Areas,” of the 2021 International**
 1069 **Building Code is amended by adding a new Section 511, “Area Limits,” to read as follows:**

**“SECTION 511
 AREA LIMITS**

Carryover amendment with addition of Non-sprinklered from June 13, 2022 amendments

511.1 Area limits. All floor area must comply with Sections 511.1.1 through 511.1.3.

511.1.1 Occupancy fire areas. Occupancy fire areas must be limited in accordance with Sections 903.2.1 through 903.2.10.2.

511.1.2 Nonsprinklered b [B]uilding fire areas. Nonsprinklered b[B]uilding fire areas must be limited in accordance with Section 903.2.13.”

511.1.3 High hazard high-piled storage areas. A 2-hour fire wall constructed in accordance with Section 706 shall be used to divide all high-piled storage buildings exceeding 500,000 square feet in area. See Section 3207.2 and 3208.2 of the Dallas Fire Code for additional fire-resistive separation requirements.”

**CHAPTER 6
 TYPES OF CONSTRUCTION**

1087
 1088
 1089
 1090 **38. Table 601, “Fire-Resistance Rating Requirements for Building Elements**
 1091 **(Hours),” of Section 601, “General,” of Chapter 6, “Types of Construction,” of the 2021**
 1092 **International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

Carryover Dallas Amendment

**“TABLE 601
 FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING REQUIREMENTS
 FOR BUILDING ELEMENTS (HOURS)**

BUILDING ELEMENT	TYPE I		TYPE II		TYPE III		TYPE IV				TYPE V	
	A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B	C	HT	A	B
Primary structural frame ^f (see Section 202)	3 ^{a,b}	2 ^{a,b,c}	1 ^{b,c}	0 ^c	1 ^{b,c}	0	3 ^a	2 ^a	2 ^a	HT	1 ^{b,c}	0

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

Bearing walls												
Exterior ^{e, i, h}	3	2	1	0	2	2	3	2	2	2	1	0
Interior	3 ^a	2 ^a	1	0	1	0	3	2	2	1/HT ^g	1	0
Nonbearing walls and partitions Exterior	See Table 705.5											
Nonbearing walls and partitions Interior ^d	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	See Section 2304.11.2	0	0
Floor construction and associated secondary members (see Section 202)	2	2	1	0	1	0	2	2	2	HT	1	0
Roof construction and associated secondary members ^h (See Section 202)	1 ½ ^b	1 ^{b,c}	1 ^{b,c}	0 ^c	1 ^{b,c}	0	1 ½	1	1	HT	1 ^{b,c}	0

1098

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

1099

a. Roof supports: Fire-resistance ratings of primary structural frame and bearing walls are permitted to be reduced by 1 hour where supporting a roof only.

1100

b. Except in Group F-1, H, M and S-1 occupancies, fire protection of structural members shall not be required, including protection of roof framing and decking where every part of the roof construction is 20 feet or more above any floor immediately below. Fire-retardant-treated wood members shall be allowed to be used for such unprotected members.

1101

1102

1103

1104

1105

c. In all occupancies, heavy timber complying with Section 2304.11 shall be allowed for roof construction, including primary structural frame members where a 1-hour or less fire-resistance rating is required.

1106

1107

d. Not less than the fire-resistance rating required by other sections of this code.

1108

e. Not less than the fire-resistance rating based on fire separation distance (see Table 705.5).

1109

f. Not less than the fire-resistance rating as referenced in Section 704.10.

1110

g. Heavy timber bearing walls supporting more than two floors or more than a floor and a roof shall have a fire resistance rating of not less than 1 hour.

1111

h. In all occupancies, when the building is protected throughout by an approved automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, roof construction and the structural frame supporting the roof only may be of unprotected noncombustible materials or heavy-timber construction complying with Section 602.4. This provision may be used for roof construction, nonbearing partitions and nonbearing exterior walls in lieu of fire-retardant treated wood in a building meeting the requirements of Section 603.1, Item 1."

1112

1113

1114

1115

1116

1117

Carryover Dallas Amendment*

1118

39. Subsection 602.4.1, "Type IV-A," of Subsection 602.4, "Type IV," of Section

1119

1120

602 "Construction Classification" of Chapter 6, "Types of Construction," of the 2021

1121

International Building Code is amended to read as follows:

1122

"602.4.2 Type IV A. Building elements in Type IV A construction shall be protected in accordance with Section 602.4.1.1 through 602.4.1.6. The required *fire-resistance rating* of noncombustible elements and protected *mass timber* elements shall be determined in accordance with Section 703.2 or Section 703.3.

1123

1124

1125

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1126 **Carryover Dallas Amendment***

1127 **40. Subsection 602.4.2, “Type IV B,” of Subsection 602.4, “Type IV,” of Section**

1128 **602 “Construction Classification” of Chapter 6, “Types of Construction,” of the 2021**

1129 **International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

1130 **“602.4.2 Type IV B.** Building elements in Type IV B construction shall be protected in accordance
1131 with Section 602.4.1.1 through 602.4.1.6. The required *fire-resistance rating* of
1132 noncombustible elements and protected *mass timber* elements shall be determined in
1133 accordance with Section 703.2 or Section 703.3.

1134 **602.4.2 Exterior Protection.** The outside face of exterior walls of *mass timber* construction
1135 shall be protected with *noncombustible protection* with a minimum assigned time of 40
1136 minutes as determined in Section 722.7.2(1). All components of the *exterior wall* covering
1137 shall be of noncombustible material except *water resistive barriers* having a peak heat release
1138 rate of less than 150 kW/m², a total heat release of less than 20MJ/m² and an effective heat of
1139 combustion of less than 18MJ/kg as determined in accordance with ASTM E 1345, and having
1140 a *flame spread index* of 25 or less and a *smoke-developed index* of 450 or less as determined
1141 in accordance with ASTM E 84 or UL 723. The ASTM E 1345 test shall be conducted on
1142 specimens at the thickness intended for use, in the horizontal orientation and at an incident
1143 radiant heat flux of 50 kW/m².

1144 **602.4.2.2 Interior protection.** Interior faces of all *mass timber* elements, including the inside
1145 face of exterior *mass timber* walls and mass timber roofs, shall be protected, as required by this
1146 section, with materials complying with Section 703.3 [~~707.3~~].
1147

1148 **602.4.2.2.1 Protection time.** *Noncombustible protection* shall contribute a time equal to or greater
1149 than times assigned in Table 722.7.1(1), but not less than 80 minutes. The use of materials and their
1150 respective protection contributions listed in Table 722.7.1(2) shall be permitted to be used for
1151 compliance with Section 722.7.1.
1152

1153 **602.4.2.2.2 Protected area.** All interior faces of all *mass timber* elements shall be protected in
1154 accordance with Section 602.4.2.2.1, including the inside face of exterior *mass timber* walls and
1155 *mass timber* roofs.
1156

1157 **Exceptions:** Unprotected portions of *mass timber* ceilings and walls complying with
1158 Section 602.4.2.2.4 and the following:
1159

1160 1. Unprotected portions of *mass timber* ceilings, including attached beams, shall be
1161 permitted and shall be limited to an area less than or equal to 100 percent of the floor
1162 area in any dwelling unit or fire area; or

1163 1.1. Unprotected portions of *mass timber* walls, including attached columns, shall
1164 be permitted and shall be limited to an area less than or equal to 40 percent of
1165 the floor area in any dwelling unit or fire area; or

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 1166 1.2. Unprotected portions of both walls and ceilings of *mass timber*, including
1167 attached columns and beams, in any dwelling unit or fire area shall be permitted
1168 in accordance with Section 602.4.2.2.3.
1169
1170 1.3. *Mass timber* columns and beams which are not an integral portion of walls or
1171 ceilings, respectively, shall be permitted to be unprotected without restriction
1172 of either aggregate area or separation from one another.
1173
1174 2. *Mass timber* columns and beams that are not an integral portion of walls or
1175 ceilings, respectively, shall be permitted to be unprotected without restriction
1176 of either aggregate area or separation from one another.

1177 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

- 1178 **41. Subsection 603.1, “Allowable Materials,” of Section 603, “Combustible**
1179 **Material in Type I and II Construction,” of Chapter 6, “Types of Construction,” of the 2021**
1180 **International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

1181 **“603.1 Allowable materials.** Combustible materials shall be permitted in buildings of Type I or
1182 II construction in the following applications in accordance with Sections 603.1.1 through 603.1.3:
1183

- 1184 1. *Fire-retardant-treated wood* shall be permitted in:
1185
1186 1.1. Nonbearing partitions where the required *fire-resistance rating* is 2 hours or less
1187 except in *shaft enclosures* within Group I-e occupancies and *ambulatory care facilities*.
1188
1189 1.2. Nonbearing *exterior walls* where fire-resistance rated construction is not required.
1190
1191 1.3. Roof construction, including girders, trusses, framing and decking.
1192

1193 **Exceptions:**

- 1194
1195 1. In buildings of Type IA construction exceeding two *stories above grade*
1196 *plane*, *fire-retardant-treated wood* is not permitted in roof construction
1197 where the vertical distance from the upper floor to the roof is less than 20
1198 feet (6096 mm).
1199
1200 2. Group I-2, roof construction containing *fire-retardant-treated wood* shall be
1201 covered by not less than Class A *roof covering* or roof assembly, and the roof
1202 assembly, and the roof assembly shall have a *fire-resistance rating* where
1203 required by the construction type.
1204
1205 1.4. Balconies, porches, decks and exterior stairways not used as required exits on
1206 buildings three stories or less above grade plane.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1207 2. Thermal and acoustical insulation, other than foam plastics, having a *flame spread index*
1208 of not more than 25.

1209

1210 **Exceptions:**

1211

1212 1. Insulation placed between two layers of non-combustible materials without an
1213 intervening airspace shall be allowed to have a *flame spread index* of not more than
1214 100.

1215

1216 2. Insulation installed between a finished floor and solid decking without intervening
1217 airspace shall be allowed to have a *flame spread index* of not more than 200.

1218

1219 3. Foam plastics in accordance with Chapter 26.

1220

1221 4. Roof coverings that have an A, B or C classification.

1222

1223 5. *Interior floor finish* and floor covering materials installed in accordance with Section
1224 804.

1225

1226 6. Millwork such as doors, door frames, window sashes and frames.

1227

1228 7. *Interior wall and ceiling finishes* installed in accordance with Section 803.

1229

1230 8. *Trim* installed in accordance with Section 806.

1231

1232 9. Where not installed greater than 15 feet (4572 mm) above grade, show windows,
1233 nailing or furring strips and wooden bulkheads below show windows, including their
1234 frames, aprons and show cases.

1235

1236 10. Finish flooring installed in accordance with Section 805.

1237

1238 11. Partitions dividing portions of stores, offices or similar places occupied by one tenant
1239 only that do not establish a *corridor* serving an *occupant load* of 30 or more shall be
1240 permitted to be constructed of *fire-retardant-treated wood*, 1-hour fire-resistance-rated
1241 construction or of wood panels or similar light construction up to 6 feet (1829 mm) in
1242 height.

1243

1244 12. Stages and platforms constructed in accordance with Sections 410.2 and 410.3,
1245 respectively.

1246

1247 13. Combustible *exterior wall coverings*, balconies and similar projections and bay or oriel
1248 windows or similar appendages in accordance with Chapter 14 and Section 705.2.3.1.

1249

1250 14. Blocking such as handrails, millwork, cabinets and window and door frames.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 1251 15. Light-transmitting plastics as permitted by Chapter 26.
1252
1253 16. Mastics and caulking materials applied to provide flexible seals between components
1254 of *exterior wall* construction.
1255
1256 17. Exterior plastic veneer installed in accordance with Section 2605.2.
1257
1258 18. Nailing or furring strips as permitted by Section 803.15.
1259
1260 19. Heavy timber as permitted by Note c to Table 601 and Sections 602.4.4.4 and 705.2.3.1.
1261
1262 20. Aggregates, component materials and admixtures as permitted by Section 703.2.1.2.
1263
1264 21. Sprayed fire-resistant materials and intumescent and mastic fire-resistant coatings,
1265 determined on the basis of *fire-resistance* tests in accordance with Section 703.2 and
1266 installed in accordance with Sections 1705.15 and 1705.16, respectively.
1267
1268 22. Materials used to protect penetrations in fire-resistance-rated assemblies in accordance
1269 with Section 714.
1270
1271 23. Materials used to protect joints in fire-resistance-rated assemblies in accordance with
1272 Section 715.
1273
1274 24. Materials allowed in the concealed spaces of buildings of Types I and II construction
1275 in accordance with Section 718.5.
1276
1277 25. Materials exposed within plenums complying with Section 602 of the Dallas
1278 [~~International~~] *Mechanical Code*.
1279
1280 26. Wall construction of freezers and coolers of less than 1,000 square feet (92.9 m²), in
1281 size, lined on both sides with noncombustible materials and the building is protected
1282 throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
1283

1284 **603.1.1 Ducts.** The use of nonmetallic ducts shall be permitted where installed in accordance
1285 with the limitations of the Dallas [~~International~~] *Mechanical Code*.
1286

1287 **603.1.2 Piping.** The use of combustible piping materials shall be permitted where installed in
1288 accordance with the limitations of the Dallas [~~International~~] *Mechanical Code* and the Dallas
1289 [~~International~~] *Plumbing Code*.
1290

1291 **603.1.3 Electrical.** The use of electrical wiring methods with combustible insulation, tubing,
1292 raceways and related components shall be permitted where installed in accordance with the
1293 limitations of this code.”
1294
1295

CHAPTER 7

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

TYPES OF CONSTRUCTION

Carryover Dallas Amendments

1296
1297
1298 **42. Subsection 705.2.3.1, “Balconies and similar projections,” of Subsection 705.2.3,**
1299 **“Projection protection,” of Section 705.2, “Projections” of Section 705 “Fire Walls” of**
1300 **Chapter 7, “Fire-Resistance Rating Requirements for Exterior Walls Based on Fire**
1301 **Separation Distance,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

1302 **“705.2.3.1 Balconies and similar projections.** Balconies and similar projections of
1303 combustible construction other than *fire-retardant-treated wood* shall be *fire-resistance* rated
1304 where required by Table 601 for floor construction or shall be of heavy timber construction in
1305 accordance with Section 2304.11. The aggregate length of the projections shall not exceed 50
1306 percent of the building’s perimeter on each floor.

Exceptions:

- 1307
- 1308
- 1309
- 1310 1. On buildings of Types I and II construction, three *stories* or less above *grade plane*,
- 1311 *fire-retardant-treated wood* shall be permitted for balconies, porches, decks and
- 1312 exterior *stairways* not used as required exits.
- 1313
- 1314 2. Untreated wood and plastic composites that comply with ASTM D7032 and Section
- 1315 2612 are permitted for pickets, rails and similar *guard* components that are limited to
- 1316 42 inches (1067 mm) in height installed at fully sprinklered exterior exit ways, exterior
- 1317 *stairs* or exterior exit balconies of Group R occupancies.
- 1318
- 1319 3. Balconies and similar projections on buildings of Types III, IV and V construction
- 1320 shall be permitted to be of Type V construction and shall not be required to have
- 1321 a *fire-resistance rating* where sprinkler protection is extended to these areas.
- 1322
- 1323 4. Where sprinkler protection is extended to the balcony areas, the aggregate length of
- 1324 the balcony on each floor shall not be limited.
- 1325

1326 **705.2.4 Bay and oriel windows.** Bay and oriel windows constructed of combustible materials
1327 shall conform to the type of construction required for the building to which they are attached.

1328

1329 **Exception:** *Fire-retardant-treated wood* shall be permitted on buildings three *stories* or less
1330 above *grade plane* of Type I, II, III or IV construction.

Carryover Dallas Amendments

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1333 **43. Table 705.5, “Fire-Resistance Rating Requirements for Exterior Walls Based on**
 1334 **Fire Separation Distance,” of Section 705, “Exterior Walls,” of Chapter 7, “Fire and Smoke**
 1335 **Protection Features” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

1336 **“TABLE 705.5**
 1337 **FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING REQUIREMENTS FOR EXTERIOR WALLS BASED ON**
 1338 **FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE^{a, d, g, l}**

FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE = X (feet)	TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION	OCCUPANCY GROUP H ^e	OCCUPANCY GROUP F-1, M, S-1 ^f	OCCUPANCY GROUP A, B, E, F-2, I, R ⁱ , S-2, U ^{h, j, k}
$X < 5^b$	All	3	2	1
$5 \leq X < 10$	IA, IVA	3	2	1
	Others	2	1	1
$10 \leq X < 30$	IA, IB, IVA, IVB	2	1	1 ^c
	IIB, VB	1	0	0
	Others	1	1	1 ^c
$X \geq 30$	All	0	0	0

- 1339 For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
- 1340 a. Load-bearing exterior walls shall also comply with the fire-resistance rating requirements of Table 601.
- 1341 b. See Section 706.1.1 for party walls.
- 1342 c. Open parking garages complying with Section 406 shall not be required to have a fire-resistance rating.
- 1343 d. The fire-resistance rating of an exterior wall is determined based upon the fire separation distance of the exterior wall and the story in which the wall is located.
- 1344 e. For special requirements for Group H occupancies, see Section 415.6.
- 1345 f. For special requirements for Group S aircraft hangars, see Section 412.3.1.
- 1346 g. Where Table 705.8 permits nonbearing exterior walls with unlimited area of unprotected openings, the required fire-resistance rating for the exterior walls is 0 hours.
- 1347 h. For a building containing only a Group U occupancy private garage or carport, the exterior wall shall not be required to have a fire-resistance rating where the fire separation is 5 feet or greater.
- 1348 i. For a Group R-3 building of Type II-B or Type V-B construction, the exterior wall shall not be required to have a fire-resistance rating where the fire separation is 5 feet or greater.
- 1349 j. For special requirements on Group R-2, R-3 and Group U carports, see Section 406.3.5.1.
- 1350 k. Exterior walls of carports open on all sides and constructed entirely of noncombustible materials are not required to have a fire-resistance rating. Distance between individual carports and imaginary property lines must be a minimum of 3 feet. All carport projections must comply with Section 705.2.
- 1351 l. In buildings provided throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, Table 602 3-hour exterior wall protection may be reduced to 2-hour protection, Table 602 2-hour protection may be reduced to 1-hour protection. Table 602 1-hour protection cannot be reduced.”

1361 **44. Table 705.8, “Maximum Area of Exterior Wall Openings Based on Fire**
 1362 **Separation Distance and Degree of Opening Protection,” of Subsection 705.8, “Openings,”**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1363 of Section 705, “Exterior Walls,” of Chapter 7, “Fire and Smoke Protection Features,” of the
 1364 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:

1365 **Carryover Dallas Amendments**

1366 style="text-align: center;">**“TABLE 705.8**
 1367 **MAXIMUM AREA OF EXTERIOR WALL OPENINGS BASED ON FIRE**
 1368 **SEPARATION DISTANCE AND DEGREE OF OPENING PROTECTION**

FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE (feet)	DEGREE OF OPENING PROTECTION	ALLOWABLE AREA ^a
0 to less than 3 ^{b, c, k}	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	Not Permitted ^{k, l}
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S) ^l	Not Permitted ^{k, l}
	Protected (P)	Not Permitted ^{k, l}
3 to less than 5 ^{d, e}	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	Not Permitted
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S) ^l	15 %
	Protected (P)	15%
5 to less than 10 ^{e, f, j}	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	10% ^h
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S) ^l	25%
	Protected (P)	25%
10 to less than 15 ^{e, f, g, j}	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	15% ^h
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S) ^l	45%
	Protected (P)	45%
15 to less than 20 ^{f, g, j}	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	25%
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S) ^l	75%
	Protected (P)	75%
20 to less than 25 ^{f, g, j}	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	45%
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S) ^l	No Limit
	Protected (P)	No Limit
25 to less than 30 ^{f, g, j}	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	70%
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S) ^l	No Limit
	Protected (P)	No Limit
30 or greater	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	No Limit
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S) ^l	No Limit
	Protected (P)	No Limit

1369 For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
 1370 UP, NS = Unprotected openings in buildings not equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in
 1371 accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
 1372 UP, S = Unprotected openings in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance
 1373 with Section 903.3.1.1.
 1374 P = Openings protected with an opening protective assembly in accordance with Section 705.8.2.
 1375 a. Values indicated are the percentage of the area of the exterior wall, per story.
 1376 b. For the requirements for fire walls of buildings with differing heights, see Section 706.6.1.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1377 c. For openings in a fire wall for buildings on the same lot, see Section 706.8.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 1378 d. The maximum percentage of unprotected and protected openings shall be 25 percent for Group R-3 occupancies.
1379 e. Unprotected openings shall not be permitted for openings with a fire separation distance of less than 15 feet for
1380 Group H-2 and H-3 occupancies.
1381 f. The area of unprotected and protected openings shall not be limited for Group R-3 occupancies, with a fire
1382 separation distance of 5 feet or greater.
1383 g. The area of openings in an open parking structure with a fire separation distance of 10 feet or greater shall not be
1384 limited.
1385 h. Includes buildings accessory to Group R-3.
1386 i. Not applicable to Group H-1, H-2 and H-3 occupancies.
1387 j. The area of openings in a building containing only a Group U occupancy private garage or carport with a fire
1388 separation distance of 5 feet or greater shall not be limited.
1389 k. For openings between S-2 parking garage and Group R-2 building, see Section 705.3, Exception 2.
1390 l. Carpports open on all sides and constructed entirely of noncombustible materials may have openings and the
1391 openings shall not require protection. Distance between individual carports and imaginary property lines shall be
1392 3 feet minimum. All carport projections shall comply with Section 705.2 of this code.
1393

Carryover Dallas Amendments

- 1394 **45. Table 706.4, “Fire Wall Fire-Resistance Ratings,” of Subsection 706.4, “Fire-**
1395 **Resistance Rating,” of Section 706, “Fire Walls,” of Chapter 7, “Fire and Smoke Protection**
1396 **Features,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**
1397

1398 **“TABLE 706.4**

1399 **FIRE WALL FIRE-RESISTANCE RATINGS^c**

GROUP	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)
A, B, E, H-4, I, R-1, R-2, U	3 ^a
F-1, H-3 ^b , H-5, M, S-1	3
H-1, H-2	4 ^b
F-2, S-2, R-3, R-4	2

- 1400 a. In Type II or V construction, walls shall be permitted to have a 2-hour *fire-resistance rating*.
1401 b. For Group H-1, H-2 or H-3 buildings, also see Sections 415.7 and 415.8.
1402 c. In buildings protected throughout by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, 4-hour
1403 and 3-hour fire walls may be reduced by 1 hour when separating other than a Group H occupancy. This reduction
1404 shall also apply for fire walls required by Section 503.1.”
1405

- 1406 **46. Subsection 708.4.2, “Fireblocks and draftstops in combustibile construction” of**
1407 **Subsection 708.4, “Continuity,” of Section 708, “Fire Partitions,” of Chapter 7, “Fire and**
1408 **Smoke Protection Features,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as**
1409 **follows:**

New COG amendment (2021)

- 1410 **“708.4.2 Fireblocks and draftstops in combustibile construction.** In combustibile construction
1411 where *fire partitions* do not extend to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, deck or slab
1412

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1413 above, the space above and along the line of the *fire partition* shall be provided with one of the
1414 following:

- 1415 1. *Fireblocking* up to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, deck or slab above using
1416 materials complying with Section 718.2.1.
- 1417 2. Draftstopping up to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, deck or slab above
1418 using materials complying with Section 718.3.1 for floors or Section 718.4.1 for *attics*.

1419 **Exceptions:**

- 1420 1. Buildings equipped with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed throughout in
1421 accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, or in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2
1422 provided that sprinkler protection is provided in the space between the top of the
1423 *fire partition* and the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, deck or slab above as
1424 required for systems complying with Section 903.3.1.1. Portions of buildings
1425 containing concealed spaces filled with noncombustible insulation as permitted for
1426 sprinkler omission shall not apply to this exception for draftstopping.
- 1427 2. Where *corridor* walls provide a *sleeping unit* or *dwelling unit* separation,
1428 draftstopping shall only be required above one of the *corridor* walls.
- 1429 3. In Group R-2 occupancies with fewer than four *dwelling unit*, *fireblocking* and
1430 draftstopping shall not be required.
- 1431 4. In Group R-2 occupancies up to and including four stories in height in buildings
1432 not exceeding 60 feet (18 288 mm) in height above *grade plane*, the *attic* space
1433 shall be subdivided by draftstops into areas not exceeding 3,000 square feet (279
1434 m²) or above every two *dwelling units*, whichever is smaller.
- 1435 5. In Group R-3 occupancies with fewer than three *dwelling units*, *fireblocking* and
1436 draftstopping shall not be required in floor assemblies.

1437 **Carryover COG Amendment**

1438 **47. Paragraph 712.1.9, “Two-Story Openings,” of Subsection 712.1, “General,” of**
1439 **Section 712, “Vertical Openings,” of Chapter 7, “Fire and Smoke Protection Features,” of**
1440 **the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

1441 **“712.1.9 Two-story openings.** In other than Groups I-2 and I-3, a vertical opening that is not
1442 used as one of the applications listed in this section shall be permitted if the opening complies
1443 with all of the items below:

- 1444 1. Does not connect more than two stories.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 1454 2. Does not penetrate a horizontal assembly that separates fire areas or smoke barriers that
1455 separate smoke compartments.
1456
- 1457 3. Is not concealed within the construction of a wall or a floor/ceiling assembly.
1458
- 1459 4. Is not open to a corridor in Group I and H [~~R~~] occupancies.
1460
- 1461 5. Is not open to a corridor on nonsprinklered floors.
1462
- 1463 6. Is separated from floor openings and air transfer openings serving other floors by
1464 construction conforming to required shaft enclosures.”
1465

Carryover Dallas Amendment

1466 **48. Subsection 713.13, “Waste and Linen Chutes and Incinerator Rooms,” of**
1467
1468 **Section 713, “Shaft Enclosures,” of Chapter 7, “Fire and Smoke Protection Features,” of the**
1469 **2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

1470 **“713.13 Waste and linen chutes and incinerator rooms.** Waste and linen chutes shall comply
1471 with the provisions of NFPA 82 including the requirements for venting, Chapter 6 and shall meet
1472 the requirements of Sections 712 and 713.13.1 through 713.13.6. Incinerator rooms shall meet the
1473 provisions of Sections 713.13.4 through 713.13.5.
1474

1475 **Exception:** Chutes serving and contained within a single dwelling unit.
1476

1477 **713.13.1 Waste and linen.** A shaft enclosure containing a recycling, or waste or linen chute
1478 shall not be used for any other purpose and shall be enclosed in accordance with Section 713.4.
1479 A shaft enclosure shall be permitted to contain recycling and waste shuts. Openings into the
1480 shaft, from access rooms and discharge rooms, shall be protected in accordance with this
1481 section and Section 716. Openings into chutes shall not be located in *corridors*. Doors into
1482 chutes shall be self-closing. Discharge doors shall be self- or automatic-closing upon the
1483 actuation of a smoke detector in accordance with Section 716.2.6.6, except that heat-activated
1484 closing devices shall be permitted between the shaft and the discharge room.
1485

1486 **713.13.2 Materials.** A shaft enclosure containing a waste, recycling, or linen chute shall be
1487 constructed of materials as permitted by the building type of construction.
1488

1489 **713.13.3 Chute access rooms.** Access openings for waste or linen chutes shall be located in
1490 rooms or compartments enclosed by not less than 1-hour *fire barriers* constructed in
1491 accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section
1492 711, or both. Openings into the access rooms shall be protected by opening protectives having
1493 a *fire protection rating* of not less than ¾ hour. Doors shall be self- or automatic-closing upon
1494 the detection of smoke in accordance with Section 716.2.6.6. The room or compartment shall

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1495 be configured to allow the access door to the room or compartment to close and latch with the
1496 access panel to the refuse or laundry chute in any position.
1497

1498 **713.13.4 Chute discharge room.** Waste or linen chutes shall discharge into an enclosed room
1499 separated by *fire barriers* with a *fire-resistance rating* not less than the required fire rating of
1500 the shaft enclosure and constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies*
1501 constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. Openings into the discharge room from
1502 the remainder of the building shall be protected by opening protectives having a *fire protection*
1503 *rating* equal to the protection required for the shaft enclosure. Doors shall be self- or automatic-
1504 closing upon the detection of smoke in accordance with Section 716.2.6.6. Waste chutes shall
1505 not terminate in an incinerator room. Waste and linen rooms that are not provided with chutes
1506 need only comply with Table 509.
1507

1508 **713.13.5 Incinerator room.** Incinerator rooms shall comply with Table 509.
1509

1510 **713.13.6 Automatic sprinkler system.** An *approved automatic sprinkler system* shall be
1511 installed in accordance with Section 903.2.11.2.”
1512

1513 **New COG amendment**

1514 **49. Subsection 718.3, “Draftstopping in floors,” of Section 718, “Concealed**
1515 **Spaces,” of Chapter 7, “Fire and Smoke Protection Features,” of the 2021 International**
1516 **Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

1517 **“718.3 Draftstopping in floors.** Draftstopping shall be installed to subdivide floor/ceiling
1518 assemblies where required by Section 708.4.2. In other than Group R occupancies, draftstopping
1519 shall be installed to subdivide combustible floor/ceiling assemblies so that horizontal floor areas
1520 do not exceed 1,000 square feet (93 m²).
1521

1522 **Exception:** Buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in
1523 accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and provided that in combustible construction
1524 sprinkler protection is provided in the floor space.
1525

1526 **718.3.1 Draftstopping materials.** Draftstopping materials shall be not less than 1/2-inche
1527 (12.7 mm) *gypsum board*, 3/8-inch (9.5 mm) *wood structural panel*, 3/8-inch (9.5 mm)
1528 *particleboard*, 1-inch (25 mm) nominal lumber, cement *fiberboard*, batts or blankets of
1529 mineral wool or glass fiber, or other *approved* materials adequately supported. The
1530 integrity of *draftstops* shall be maintained.
1531

1532 **New COG amendment**

1533 **50. Subsection 718.4, “Draftstopping in attics,” of Section 718, “Concealed**
1534 **Spaces,” of Chapter 7, “Fire and Smoke Protection Features,” of the 2021 International**
1535 **Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1536 “**718.4 Draftstopping in attics.** Draftstopping shall be installed to subdivide *attic* spaces where
1537 required by Section 708.2. In other than Group R, draftstopping shall be installed to subdivide
1538 combustible *attic* spaces and combustible concealed roof spaces such that any horizontal area does
1539 not exceed 3,000 square feet (279 m²). *Ventilation* of concealed roof spaces shall be maintained
1540 in accordance with Section 1202.2.1.

1541
1542 **Exception:** Buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in
1543 accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and provided that in combustible construction
1544 sprinkler protection is provided in the floor space.
1545

1546 **718.4.1 Draftstopping materials.** Materials utilized for draftstopping of attic spaces shall
1547 comply with Section 718.3.1.

1548
1549 **718.4.1.1 Openings.** Openings in the partitions shall be protected by *self-closing*
1550 doors with automatic latches constructed as required for the partitions.

1551 1552 CHAPTER 9 1553 FIRE PROTECTION AND LIFE SAFETY SYSTEMS 1554

1555 Carryover COG Amendment

1556 **51. Paragraph 901.6.1, “Automatic Sprinkler Systems,” of Subsection 901.6,**
1557 **“Supervisory Service,” of Section 901, “General,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,”**
1558 **of the 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new Subparagraph**
1559 **901.6.1.1, “Standpipe Testing,” to read as follows:**

1560 “901.6.1.1 Standpipe testing. Maintenance of standpipes shall be as per Section 905.12.”
1561

1562 Carryover COG Amendment

1563 **52. Section 901, “General,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021**
1564 **International Building Code is amended by adding a new Subsection 901.8, “Systems Out Of**
1565 **Service,” to read as follows:**

1566 “901.8 Systems out of service. Where a required fire protection system is out of service, or in the
1567 event of an excessive number of activations, the fire department and the fire code official shall be
1568 notified immediately, and where required by the fire code official, the building must either be
1569 evacuated or standby personnel shall be provided for all occupants left unprotected until the
1570 protection has been returned to service. Where utilized, *standby personnel* shall be provided with
1571 at least one approved means for notification of the fire department and their only duty shall be to
1572 perform constant patrols of the protected premises and keep watch for fires.”

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1573 **Carryover COG Amendment**

1574 **53. Subsection [F] 903.1, “General,” of Section 903, “Automatic Sprinkler**
1575 **Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code**
1576 **is amended to read as follows:**

1577 “[F] **903.1 General.** *Automatic sprinkler systems* shall comply with this section.

1578
1579 [F] **903.1.1 Alternative protection.** *Alternative automatic fire-extinguishing systems*
1580 *complying with Section 904 shall be permitted in addition to [instead of] automatic sprinkler*
1581 *protection where recognized by the applicable standard or as [and] approved by the fire code*
1582 *official.*

1583
1584 **903.1.2 Separation.** Areas of buildings protected by automatic sprinklers shall be separated
1585 from unsprinklered areas by fire barriers complying with Section 707 having a minimum fire-
1586 resistance rating of 2 hours.
1587

1588 **Exceptions:**

- 1589
- 1590 1. Open parking garages in accordance with Section 406.5.
 - 1591 2. Special application, spray booth and kitchen hood suppression systems.”

1592 **Carryover COG Amendment**

1593 **54. Subsection [F] 903.2, “Where Required,” of Section 903, “Automatic Sprinkler**
1594 **Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code**
1595 **is amended to read as follows:**

1596
1597 “[F] **903.2 Where required.** *Approved automatic sprinkler systems* in new buildings and
1598 *structures shall be provided in the locations described in Sections 903.2.1 through 903.2.12.*
1599 *Automatic sprinklers must not be installed in elevator machine rooms, elevator machine spaces*
1600 *and elevator hoistways other than pits where such sprinklers would not necessitate shunt trip*
1601 *requirements under any circumstances. Storage is not allowed within the elevator machine room.*
1602 *Signage must be provided at the entry to the elevator machine room indicating “ELEVATOR*
1603 *MACHINERY – NO STORAGE ALLOWED.”*
1604
1605

1606 [~~**Exception:** *Spaces or areas in telecommunications buildings used exclusively for*~~
1607 ~~*telecommunications equipment, associated electrical power distribution equipment, batteries*~~
1608 ~~*and standby engines, provided those spaces or areas are equipped throughout with an automatic*~~
1609 ~~*smoke detection system in accordance with Section 907.2 and are separated from the remainder*~~
1610 ~~*of the building by not less than 1-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section*~~

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1611 ~~707 or not less than 2-hour horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711,~~
1612 ~~or both.]~~
1613

1614 [F] 903.2.1 Group A. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout buildings
1615 and portions thereof used as Group A occupancies as provided in this section.
1616

1617 [F] 903.2.1.1 Group A-1. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout
1618 stories containing Group A-1 occupancies and throughout all stories from the Group A-1
1619 occupancy to and including the levels of exit discharge serving that occupancy where one
1620 of the following conditions exists:
1621

- 1622 1. The fire area exceeds 12,000 square feet (1115 m²);
- 1623 2. The fire area has an occupant load of 300 or more;
- 1624 3. The fire area is located on a floor other than a level of exit discharge serving such
1625 occupancies; or
- 1626 4. The fire area contains a multitheater complex.
1627

1628 [F] 903.2.1.2 Group A-2. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout
1629 stories containing Group A-2 occupancies and throughout all stories from the Group A-2
1630 occupancy to and including the levels of exit discharge serving that occupancy where one
1631 of the following conditions exists:

- 1632 1. The fire area exceeds 5,000 square feet (464 m²);
- 1633 2. The fire area has an occupant load of 100 or more; or
- 1634 3. The fire area is located on a floor other than a level of exit discharge serving such
1635 occupancies.
1636

1637 [F] 903.2.1.3 Group A-3. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout
1638 stories containing Group A-3 occupancies and throughout all stories from the Group A-3
1639 occupancy to and including the levels of exit discharge serving that occupancy where one
1640 of the following conditions exists:

- 1641 1. The fire area exceeds 12,000 square feet (1115 m²);
- 1642 2. The fire area has an occupant load of 300 or more; or
- 1643 3. The fire area is located on a floor other than a level of exit discharge serving such
1644 occupancies.
1645
1646

1647 [F] 903.2.1.4 Group A-4. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout
1648 stories containing Group A-4 occupancies and throughout all stories from the Group A-4
1649 occupancy to and including the levels of exit discharge serving that occupancy where one
1650 of the following conditions exists:

- 1651 1. The fire area exceeds 12,000 square feet (1115 m²);
- 1652 2. The fire area has an occupant load of 300 or more; or
- 1653 3. The fire area is located on a floor other than a level of exit discharge serving such
1654 occupancies.
1655

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1656 [F] **903.2.1.5 Group A-5.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided for all enclosed
1657 Group A-5 accessory use areas in excess of 1,000 square feet (93 m²).
1658

1659 [F] **903.2.1.5.1 Spaces under grandstands or bleachers:** Enclosed spaces under
1660 grandstands or *bleachers* shall be equipped with an *automatic sprinkler system* in
1661 accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 where either of the following exist:
1662

- 1663 1. The enclosed area is 1,000 square feet (93 m²) or less and is not constructed in
1664 accordance with Section 1030.1.1.1.
- 1665 2. The enclosed area exceeds 1,000 square feet (93 m²).
1666

1667 [F] **903.2.1.6 Assembly occupancies on roofs.** Where an occupied roof has an assembly
1668 occupancy with an *occupant load* exceeding 100 for Group A-2 and 300 for other Group
1669 A occupancies, all floors between the occupied roof and the *level of exit discharge* shall be
1670 equipped with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or
1671 903.3.1.2.
1672

1673 **Exception:** Open parking garages of Type I or Type II construction.
1674

1675 **903.2.1.7 Multiple fire areas.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided where
1676 multiple fire areas of Group A-1, A-2, A-3, or A-4 occupancies share exit or exit access
1677 components and the combined *occupant load* of these fire areas is 300 or more.
1678

1679 [F] **903.2.2 Ambulatory care facilities.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be installed
1680 throughout the entire floor containing an *ambulatory care facility* where either of the following
1681 conditions exist at any time:
1682

- 1683 1. Four or more care recipients are incapable of self-preservation, whether rendered
1684 incapable by staff or staff has accepted responsibility for care recipients already
1685 incapable.
- 1686 2. One or more care recipients that are incapable of self-preservation are located at other
1687 than the level of exit discharge serving such a facility.
1688

1689 In buildings where ambulatory care is provided on levels other than the *level of exit*
1690 *discharge*, an *automatic sprinkler system* shall be installed throughout the entire floor where
1691 such care is provided as well as all floors below, and all floors between the level of ambulatory
1692 care and the nearest *level of exit discharge*, including the *level of exit discharge*.
1693

1694 **Exception:** Floors classified as an open parking garage are not required to be
1695 sprinklered.
1696

1697 [F] **903.2.3 Group E.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided for Group E
1698 occupancies as follows:

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 1699 1. Throughout all Group E *fire areas* greater than 12,000 square feet (1115 m²) in area.
1700
1701 2. The Group E fire area is located on a floor other than a *level of exit discharge* serving
1702 such occupancies.
1703

1704 **Exception:** In buildings where every classroom has not fewer than one exterior exit
1705 door at ground level, an *automatic sprinkler system* is not required in any area
1706 below the lowest *level of exit discharge* serving that area.
1707

- 1708 3. The Group E fire area has an occupant load of 300 or more.
1709

1710 **[F] 903.2.4 Group F-1.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided throughout all
1711 buildings containing a Group F-1 occupancy where one of the following conditions exists:
1712

- 1713 1. A Group F-1 *fire area* exceeds 12,000 square feet (1115 m²).
1714
1715 2. A Group F-1 *fire area* is located more than three stories above *grade plane*.
1716
1717 3. The combined area of all Group F-1 *fire areas* on all floors, including any mezzanines,
1718 exceeds 24,000 square feet (2230 m²).
1719

1720 **[F] 903.2.4.1 Woodworking operations.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided
1721 throughout all Group F-1 occupancy *fire areas* that contain wood-working operations in
1722 excess of 2,500 square feet (232 m²) in area that generate finely divided combustible waste
1723 or use finely divided combustible materials.
1724

1725 **New COG Amendment**

1726 **[F] 903.2.4.2 Group F-1 distilled spirits.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided
1727 throughout a Group F-1 *fire area* used for the manufacture of distilled spirits involving
1728 more than 120 gallons of distilled spirits (>16% alcohol) in the fire area at any one time.
1729

1730 **[F] 903.2.4.3 Group F-1 upholstered furniture or mattresses.** An *automatic sprinkler*
1731 *system* shall be provided throughout a Group F-1 *fire area* that exceeds 2,500 square feet
1732 (232 m²) used for the manufacture of upholstered furniture or mattresses.
1733

1734 **[F] 903.2.5 Group H.** *Automatic sprinkler systems* shall be provided in high-hazard
1735 occupancies as required in Sections 903.2.5.1 through 903.2.5.3.
1736

1737 **[F] 903.2.5.1 General.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be installed in Group H
1738 occupancies.
1739

1740 **[F] 903.2.5.2 Group H-5 occupancies.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be installed
1741 throughout buildings containing Group H-5 occupancies. The design of the sprinkler
1742 system shall not be less than that required by this code for the occupancy hazard
1743 classifications in accordance with Table 903.2.5.2.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1744 Where the design area of the sprinkler system consists of a *corridor* protected by one
1745 row of sprinklers, the maximum number of sprinklers required to be calculated is 13.
1746

1747 **[F] 903.2.5.3 Pyroxylin plastics.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided in
1748 buildings, or portions thereof, where cellulose nitrate film or pyroxylin plastics are
1749 manufactured, stored or handled in quantities exceeding 100 pounds (45 kg).
1750

1751 **[F] 903.2.6 Group I.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided throughout buildings
1752 with a Group I *fire area*.
1753

1754 **Exceptions:**

- 1755 1. An *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2 shall
1756 be permitted in Group I-1 Condition 1 facilities.
1757
- 1758 2. An *automatic sprinkler system* is not required where Group I-4 day care facilities
1759 are at the *level of exit discharge* and where every room where care is provided has
1760 not fewer than one exterior exit door.
1761
- 1762 3. In buildings where Group I-4 day care is provided on levels other than the *level of*
1763 *exit discharge*, an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1
1764 shall be installed on the entire floor where care is provided, all floors between the
1765 level of care and the level of *exit discharge*, and all floors below the *level of exit*
1766 *discharge* other than areas classified as an open parking garage.
1767
1768

1769 **[F] 903.2.7 Group M.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided throughout buildings
1770 containing a Group M occupancy where one of the following conditions exists:
1771

- 1772 1. A Group M *fire area* exceeds 12,000 square feet (1115 m²).
1773
- 1774 2. A Group M *fire area* is located more than three stories above *grade plane*.
1775
- 1776 3. The combined area of all Group M *fire areas* on all floors, including any mezzanines,
1777 exceeds 24,000 square feet (2230 m²).
1778

1779 **[F] 903.2.7.1 High-piled storage.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided in
1780 accordance with the Dallas [~~International~~] *Fire Code* in all buildings of Group M where
1781 storage of merchandise is in high-piled or rack storage arrays.
1782

1783 **[F] 903.2.7.2 Group M upholstered furniture or mattresses.** An *automatic sprinkler*
1784 *system* shall be provided throughout a Group M *fire area* where the area used for the display
1785 and sale of upholstered furniture or mattresses exceeds 5,000 square feet (464 m²).

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1786 [F] **903.2.8 Group R.** An *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section
1787 903.3 shall be provided throughout all buildings with a Group R *fire area*.
1788

1789 **Exception:** A *dwelling, townhome, townhouse, Group R-4 care facility with five or fewer*
1790 *persons that are within a single family or lodging house which complies with Section*
1791 *903.2.13.*
1792

1793 [F] **903.2.8.1 Group R-3.** An *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with
1794 Section 903.3.1.3 shall be permitted in Group R-3 occupancies.
1795

1796 [F] **903.2.8.2 Group R-4 Condition 1.** An *automatic sprinkler system* installed in
1797 accordance with Section 903.3.1.3 shall be permitted in Group R-4 Condition 1
1798 occupancies.
1799

1800 [F] **903.2.8.3 Group R-4 Condition 2.** An *automatic sprinkler system* installed in
1801 accordance with Section 903.3.1.2 shall be permitted in Group R-4 Condition 2
1802 occupancies.
1803

1804 [F] **903.2.8.4 Care facilities.** An *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with
1805 Section 903.3.1.3 shall be permitted in care facilities with five or fewer individuals in a
1806 single-family dwelling.
1807

1808 [F] **903.2.9 Group S-1.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided throughout all
1809 buildings containing a Group S-1 occupancy where one of the following conditions exists:
1810

- 1811 1. A Group S-1 *fire area* exceeds 12,000 square feet (1115 m²).
- 1812 2. A Group S-1 *fire area* is located more than three stories above *grade plane*.
- 1813 3. The combined area of all Group S-1 *fire areas* on all floors, including any mezzanines,
1814 exceeds 24,000 square feet (2230 m²).
- 1815 4. A Group S-1 *fire area* used for the storage of commercial motor vehicles where the *fire*
1816 *area* exceeds 5,000 square feet (464 m²).
- 1817

1818 [F] **903.2.9.1 Repair garages.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided
1819 throughout all buildings used as repair garages in accordance with Section 406, as shown:
1820

- 1821 1. Buildings having two or more *stories above grade plane*, including basements, with
1822 a *fire area* containing a repair garage exceeding 10,000 square feet (929 m²).
- 1823 2. Buildings not more than one *story above grade plane*, with a *fire area* containing a
1824 repair garage exceeding 12,000 square feet (1115 m²).
- 1825 3. Buildings with repair garages servicing vehicles parked in basements.
1826
1827
1828
1829
1830

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1831 4. A Group S-1 *fire area* used for the repair of commercial motor vehicles where the
1832 *fire area* exceeds 5,000 square feet (464 m²).
1833

1834 [F] **903.2.9.2 Bulk storage of tires.** Buildings and structures where the area for the storage
1835 of tires exceeds 20,000 cubic feet (566 m³) shall be equipped throughout with an *automatic*
1836 *sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
1837

1838 **New COG amendment**

1839 [F] **903.2.9.3 Group S-1 Distilled spirits or wine.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be
1840 provided throughout a Group S-1 *fire area* used for the bulk storage of distilled spirits or
1841 wine involving more than 120 gallons of distilled spirits or wine (>16% alcohol) in the fire
1842 area at any one time.
1843

1844 **Carryover COG amendment**

1845 [F] **903.2.9.4 Group S-1 upholstered furniture and mattresses.** An *automatic sprinkler*
1846 *system* shall be provided throughout a Group S-1 *fire area* where the area used for the
1847 storage of upholstered furniture or mattresses exceeds 2,500 square feet (232 m²). This use
1848 must also comply with the applicable provisions of Chapter 32, “High-Pile Combustible
1849 Storage,” of the Dallas Fire Code due to the presence of Group A plastics used in
1850 upholstered furniture and mattresses.

1851 **Exception removed due to COG amendment below**

1852 ~~**Exception:** Self storage facilities not greater than one story above grade plane where~~
1853 ~~all storage spaces can be accessed directly from the exterior.~~
1854

1855 **Carryover COG amendment**

1856 **903.2.9.5 Self-service storage facilities.** An *automatic sprinkler system* must be installed
1857 throughout all self-service storage facilities.
1858

1859 [F] **903.2.10 Group S-2 enclosed parking garages.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be
1860 provided throughout buildings classified as enclosed parking garages in accordance with
1861 Section 406.4 406.6 where either of the following conditions exists:
1862

- 1863 1. Where the *fire area* of the enclosed parking garage in accordance with Section 406.4
1864 exceeds 12,000 square feet (1115 m²)
1865 2. Where the enclosed parking garage in accordance with Section 406.6 is located beneath
1866 other groups.

1867 **Exception:** Enclosed parking garages located beneath Group R-3
1868 occupancies.
1869

- 1870 3. Where the fire area of the open parking garage in accordance with Section 406.5
1871 exceeds 48,000 square feet (4460 m²)

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1872 [F] **903.2.10.1 Commercial parking garages.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be
1873 provided throughout buildings used for storage of commercial motor vehicles where the
1874 *fire area* exceeds 5,000 square feet (4464 m²).
1875

1876 [F] **903.2.10.2 Mechanical-access enclosed parking garages.** An *approved automatic*
1877 *sprinkler system* shall be provided throughout buildings used for the storage of motor
1878 vehicles in a *mechanical-access enclosed parking garage*. The portion of the building that
1879 contains the *mechanical-access enclosed parking garage* shall be protected with a specially
1880 engineered *automatic sprinkler system*.
1881

1882 [F] **903.2.11 Specific building areas and hazards.** In all occupancies other than Group U, an
1883 *automatic sprinkler system* shall be installed for building design or hazards in the locations set
1884 forth in Sections 903.2.11.1 through 903.2.11.8 [~~903.2.11.6~~].
1885

1886 [F] **903.2.11.1 Stories without openings.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be installed
1887 throughout all *stories*, including basements, of all buildings where the floor area exceeds
1888 1,500 square feet (139.4 m²) and where the story does not comply with the following types
1889 of *exterior wall* openings:
1890

- 1891 1. Openings below grade that lead directly to ground level by an exterior *stairway*
1892 complying with Section 1011 or an outside ramp complying with Section 1012.
1893 Openings shall be located in each 50 linear feet (15 240 mm), or fraction thereof,
1894 of *exterior wall* in the *story* on at least one side. The required openings shall be
1895 distributed such that the lineal distance between adjacent openings does not exceed
1896 50 feet (15 240 mm).
1897
- 1898 2. Openings entirely above the adjoining ground level totaling at least 20 square feet
1899 (1.86 m²) in each 50 linear feet (15 240 mm), or fraction thereof, of *exterior wall*
1900 in the *story* on at least one side. The required openings shall be distributed such
1901 that the lineal distance between adjacent openings does not exceed 50 feet (15 240
1902 mm). The height of the bottom of the clear opening shall not exceed 44 inches
1903 (1118 mm) measured from the floor.
1904

1905 [F] **903.2.11.1.1 Opening dimensions and access.** Openings shall have a minimum
1906 dimension of not less than 30 inches (762 mm). Access to such openings shall be
1907 provided for fire department from the exterior and shall not be obstructed in a manner
1908 that firefighting or rescue cannot be accomplished from the exterior.
1909

1910 [F] **903.2.11.1.2. Openings on one side only.** Where openings in a *story* are provided
1911 on only one side and the opposite wall of such *story* is more than 75 feet (22 860 mm)
1912 from such openings, the *story* shall be equipped throughout with an *approved automatic*
1913 *sprinkler system*, or openings as specified above shall be provided on at least two sides
1914 of the *story*.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1915 [F] 903.2.11.1.3 Basements. Where any portion of a *basement* is located more than 75
1916 feet (22 860 mm) from openings required by Section 903.2.11.1, or where walls,
1917 partitions or other obstructions are installed that restrict the application of water from
1918 hose streams, the *basement* shall be equipped throughout with an *approved automatic*
1919 *sprinkler system*.

1920
1921 [F] 903.2.11.2 Rubbish and linen chutes. An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be installed
1922 at the top of rubbish and linen chutes and in their terminal rooms. Chutes shall have
1923 additional sprinkler heads installed at alternate floors and at the lowest intake. Where a
1924 rubbish chute extends through a building more than one floor below the lowest intake, the
1925 extension shall have sprinklers installed that are recessed from the drop area of the chute
1926 and protected from freezing in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. Such sprinklers shall be
1927 installed at alternate floors, beginning with the second level below the last intake and
1928 ending with the floor above the discharge. Access to sprinklers in chutes shall be provided
1929 for servicing.

1930
1931 **Carryover COG Amendment**

1932 [F] 903.2.11.3 Buildings 55 feet or more in height. An *automatic sprinkler system* shall
1933 be installed throughout buildings that have one or more stories other than penthouses in
1934 compliance with Section 1511 [~~with an occupant load of 30 or more~~] located 55 feet (16
1935 764 mm) or more above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access, measured to the
1936 finished floor. Carryover

1937
1938 [~~Exception: Occupancies in Group F-2.~~]

1939
1940 [F] 903.2.11.4 Ducts conveying hazardous exhausts. Where required by the *Dallas*
1941 [~~International~~] *Mechanical Code*, automatic sprinklers shall be provided in ducts
1942 conveying hazardous exhaust or flammable or combustible materials.

1943
1944 **Exception:** Ducts where the largest cross-sectional diameter of the duct is less than 10
1945 inches (254 mm).

1946
1947 [F] 903.2.11.5 Commercial cooking operations. An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be
1948 installed in commercial kitchen exhaust and duct systems where an *automatic sprinkler*
1949 *system* is used to comply with Section 904.

1950
1951
1952 [F] 903.2.11.6 Other required suppression systems. In addition to the requirements of
1953 Section 903.2, the provisions indicated in Table 903.2.11.6 require the installation of a fire
1954 suppression system for certain buildings and areas.

1955
1956 **Carryover COG Amendments**

1957
1958 **903.2.11.7 High-piled combustible storage.** For any building with a clear height
1959 exceeding 12 feet (4572 mm), see Chapter 32 of the *Dallas Fire Code* to determine if those
1960 provisions apply.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1969
1970
1971
1972
1973
1974
1975
1976
1977
1978
1979
1980
1981
1982
1983
1984
1985
1986
1987
1988
1989
1990
1991
1992
1993
1994
1995
1996
1997
1998
1999
2000
2001
2002
2003
2004
2005
2006
2007
2008
2009

Carryover COG Amendments

903.2.11.8 Spray booths and rooms. New and existing spray booths and spraying rooms must be protected by an approved automatic fire-extinguishing system.

[F] 903.2.12 During construction. *Automatic sprinkler systems* required during construction, alteration and demolition operations shall be provided in accordance with Chapter 33 of the *Dallas [International] Fire Code*.

Carryover Dallas Amendment and update per June 13, 2022 Amendments

903.2.13 Nonsprinklered b[B]uilding fire areas. Any qualified building area must provide a minimum number of fire walls throughout the building such that no building fire area exceeds the limits of the number listed in Table 903.2.13. Qualified building area is the total allowable area which has been determined first by the methods of increase as given in Section 506 without using the increases for sprinklers.

Exception: Fire walls are not required in accordance with this section in any of the following cases:

1. Buildings that have an approved automatic sprinkler system installed throughout in accordance with Sections 903.3.1.1 and 903.3.1.2.
2. Open air portions of Group A, Division 5 occupancies.
3. Open parking garages complying with Section 406.5.
4. Buildings of Type I or Type II construction used exclusively for noncombustible contents or the storage of noncombustible material not packed or crated in combustible material.
5. The floor area of existing nonsprinklered buildings housing other than Group H occupancies may be increased by not more than 5 percent. The floor area increase must not exceed 2,500 square feet (232.25 m²). Not more than one increase in floor area is permitted under this exception.
6. Membrane structures when authorized by the building official”

Carryover Dallas Amendment and June 13, 2022 Amendments

55. Subsection [F] 903.2, “Where Required,” of Section 903, “Automatic Sprinkler Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new Table 903.2.13, “Building Fire Area Limits (Sq. Ft.),” to read as follows:

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

“TABLE 903.2.13

NONSPRINKLERED BUILDING FIRE AREA LIMITS (SQ. FT.)

GROUP	TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION									
	TYPE I		TYPE II		TYPE III		TYPE IV	TYPE V		
	A	B	A	B	A	B	A-C	HT	A	B
A ¹	25,000	25,000	15,000	8,500	14,000	8,500	<u>NP</u>	15,000	11,500	5,500
A ^{2,3}	25,000	25,000	15,000	8,500	15,000	8,500	<u>NP</u>	15,000	15,000	5,500
A ⁴ , F, M, S-1, S-2 ⁵	25,000	25,000	15,000	10,000	15,000	10,000	<u>NP</u>	15,000	15,000	7,500
A-4 ⁶	@	@	@	@	@	@	<u>NP</u>	@	@	@
A-5 ⁷ , B ⁸ , E	35,000	35,000	20,000	15,000	20,000	15,000	<u>NP</u>	20,000	15,000	7,500
B ⁹	25,000	25,000	15,000	10,000	15,000	10,000	<u>NP</u>	15,000	15,000	7,500
H, I-1, I-3, I-4	0	0	0	0	0	0	<u>NP</u>	0	0	0
I-2	0	0	0	0	0	NP	<u>NP</u>	0	0	NP
R	7,500	7,500	7,500	7,500	7,500	7,500	<u>NP</u>	7,500	7,500	7,500
U ¹⁰	@	@	@	@	@	@	<u>NP</u>	@	@	@
U ^{11, 12}	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	<u>NP</u>	N/A	N/A	N/A

For SI: 1 foot = 305 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m².

NP: Not Permitted

NA: Not Applicable

1. Assembly with a stage and occupant load of 1,000 or more.
2. Assembly with a stage and occupant load of less than 1,000.
3. Assembly without a stage with occupant load of 300 or more.
4. Assembly without a stage with occupant load of less than 300.
5. Open parking garages. See Sections 406.5, 403.1, and 903.2.13, Exception 3.
6. Indoor sports, see Footnote 1, 2, 3 or 4, as appropriate.
7. Stadiums, reviewing stands, amusement park structures not with other A occupancy. See Sections 903.2.13 and 403.1.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 2023 8. Office buildings, police and fire stations, buildings with rooms used for education beyond 12th grade
2024 with less than 50 persons.
2025 9. All other B occupancies.
2026 10. Private garages and carports. See Section 406.3.
2027 11. Fences over 6 feet high, tanks, sheds and agricultural buildings not classifiable in other occupancies.
2028 12. Towers, See Section 412.”
2029

2030 **Carryover COG Amendments, COG updated #3**

2031 **56. Subsection [F] 903.3, “Installation Requirements,” of Section 903, “Automatic**

2032 **Sprinkler Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International**

2033 **Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

2034 “[F] 903.3 **Installation requirements.** *Automatic sprinkler systems* shall be designed and installed
2035 in accordance with Sections 903.3.1 through 903.3.8.
2036

2037 [F] 903.3.1 **Standards.** Sprinkler systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with
2038 Section 903.3.1.1 unless otherwise permitted by Sections 903.3.1.2 and 903.3.1.3 and other
2039 chapters of this code, as applicable.
2040

2041 [F] 903.3.1.1 **NFPA 13 sprinkler systems.** Where the provisions of this code require that
2042 a building or portion thereof be equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in
2043 accordance with this section, sprinklers shall be installed throughout in accordance with
2044 NFPA 13 except as provided in Sections 903.3.1.1.1 and 903.3.1.1.2.
2045

2046 [F] 903.3.1.1.1 **Exempt locations.** When approved by the fire code official,
2047 a[~~A~~]utomatic sprinklers shall not be required in the following rooms or areas where
2048 such rooms or areas are protected with an *approved* automatic fire detection system in
2049 accordance with Section 907.2 that will respond to visible or invisible particles of
2050 combustion. Sprinklers shall not be omitted from a room merely because it is damp, of
2051 fire-resistance-rated construction or contains electrical equipment.
2052

- 2053 1. A room where the application of water, or flame and water, constitutes a serious
2054 life or fire hazard.
2055
2056 2. A room or space where sprinklers are considered undesirable because of the
2057 nature of the contents, when *approved* by the fire code official.
2058
2059 3. Generator and transformer rooms, under the direct control of a public utility,
2060 separated from the remainder of the building by walls and floor/ceiling or
2061 roof/ceiling assemblies having a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than 2 hours.
2062 The phrase in the middle

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 2063 4. ~~[Rooms or areas that are of noncombustible construction with wholly~~
2064 ~~noncombustible contents.~~
- 2066 5. ~~Fire service access.]~~ E[~~e~~]levator machine rooms, [~~and~~] machinery spaces and
2067 hoistways, other than pits where such sprinklers would not necessitate shunt
2068 trip requirements under any circumstances.
- 2070 6. ~~Machine rooms, machinery spaces, control rooms and control spaces associated~~
2071 ~~with occupant evacuation elevators designed in accordance with Section 3008.~~
2072

2073 ~~[~~F~~]903.3.1.1.2. [~~Bathrooms.~~ In Group R occupancies sprinklers shall not be required~~
2074 ~~in bathrooms that do not exceed 55 square feet (5 m²) in area and are located within~~
2075 ~~individual *dwelling units* or *sleeping units*, provided that walls and ceilings, including~~
2076 ~~the walls and ceilings behind a shower enclosure or tub, are of noncombustible or~~
2077 ~~limited combustible materials with a 15-minute thermal barrier rating.]~~
2078

2079 [~~F~~]903.3.1.1.2. **Residential systems.** Residential sprinkler systems installed in
2080 accordance with Sections 903.3.1.2 and 903.3.1.3 will be recognized for the purposes
2081 of exceptions or reductions, commonly referred to as “trade-offs,” only if permitted by
2082 other provisions of this code.
2083

2084 **Carryover COG Amendments**

2085 **[~~F~~] 903.3.1.2 NFPA 13R sprinkler systems.** *Automatic sprinkler systems* in Group R
2086 occupancies up to and including four stories in height in buildings not exceeding 60 feet
2087 (18 288 mm) in height above grade plane shall be permitted to be installed throughout in
2088 accordance with NFPA 13R where the Group R occupancy meets all of the following
2089 conditions. Refer also to Section 903.3.1.1.2.
2090

- 2091 1. Four stories or fewer above *grade plane*.
- 2092 2. The floor level of the highest *story* is ~~30~~ 35 feet (9144 10668 mm) or less above the
2093 lowest level of fire department vehicle access.
- 2094 3. The floor level of the lowest *story* is ~~30~~ 35 feet (9144 10668 mm) or less below the
2095 lowest level of fire department vehicle access.
2096

2097 The number of stories of Group R occupancies constructed in accordance with Sections
2098 510.2 and 510.4 shall be measured from the horizontal assembly creating separate
2099 buildings.
2100

2101 **[~~F~~] 903.3.1.2.1 Balconies and decks.** Sprinkler protection shall be provided for
2102 exterior balconies, decks and ground floor patios of *dwelling units* and *sleeping units*
2103 where either of the following conditions exists:
2104

- 2105 1. The building is of Type V construction, provided there is a roof or deck
2106 above.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2107 2. Exterior balconies, decks and ground floor patios of dwelling units and
2108 sleeping units are constructed in accordance with Section 705.2.3.1,
2109 exception 3.
2110

2111 Sidewall sprinklers that are used to protect such areas shall be permitted to be
2112 located such that their deflectors are within 1 inch (25 mm) to 6 inches (152 mm)
2113 below the structural members and a maximum distance of 14 inches (356 mm) below
2114 the deck of the exterior balconies and decks that are constructed of open wood joist
2115 construction.
2116

New COG Amendment – Updated with new language in IBC 2021

2117 **[F] 903.3.1.2.2 Corridors and balconies in the means of egress.** Sprinkler protection
2118 shall be provided in all corridors and for all balconies. ~~in the means of egress where~~
2119 ~~any of the following conditions apply:~~
2120
2121

2122 1. ~~Corridors with combustible floor and walls.~~
2123

2124 2. ~~Corridors with an interior change of direction exceeding 45 degrees (0.79~~
2125 ~~rad).~~
2126

2127 3. ~~Corridors that are less than 50 percent open to the outside atmosphere at~~
2128 ~~the ends.~~
2129

2130 4. ~~Open ended corridors and associated exterior stairways and ramps as~~
2131 ~~specified in Section 1027.6, Exception 3.~~
2132

2133 5. ~~Egress balconies not complying with Sections 1021.2 and 1021.3.~~
2134

New/Updated COG Amendment – Updated with new language in IBC 2021

2135 **[F] 903.3.1.2.3 Attics.** ~~Attic protection shall be provided as follows:~~ **Attached**
2136 **Garages and Attics.** Sprinkler protection is required in attached garages, and in the
2137 following attic spaces:
2138
2139

2140 1. *Attics* that are used or intended for living purposes or storage shall be
2141 protected by an *automatic sprinkler system*.
2142

2143 2. Where fuel-fired equipment is installed in an unsprinklered *attic*, not
2144 fewer than one quick-response intermediate temperature sprinkler shall be
2145 installed above equipment.
2146

2147 3. ~~Where located in a building Type III, Type IV or Type V construction~~
2148 ~~designed in accordance with Section 510.2 or 510.4, attics not required by~~
2149 ~~Item 1 to have sprinklers shall comply with one of the following if the roof~~
2150 ~~assembly is located more than 55 feet (16 764 mm) above the lowest level~~

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2151 of fire department vehicle access needed to meet the provisions in Section
2152 503.

2153 3.1 Provide ~~automatic sprinkler system~~ protection.

2154 3.2 Construct the ~~attic~~ using noncombustible materials.

2155 3.3 Construct the ~~attic~~ using ~~fire-retardant-treated~~ wood
2156 complying with Section 2303.2.

2157 3.4 Fill the ~~attic~~ with noncombustible insulation.

2158

2159 3. Attic spaces of buildings that are two or more stories in height above grade
2160 plane or above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access.

2161 The height of the roof assembly shall be determined by measuring
2162 the distance from the lowest required fire vehicle access road surface
2163 adjacent to the building to the eave of the highest pitched roof, the
2164 intersection of the highest roof to the exterior wall, or the top of the highest
2165 parapet, whichever yields the greatest distance. For the purpose of this
2166 measurement, required fire vehicle access roads shall include only those
2167 roads that are necessary for compliance with Section 503 of the
2168 *International Fire Code*.

2169

2170 4. Group R-4, Condition 2 occupancy *attics* not required by Item 1 or 3 to
2171 have sprinklers shall comply with one of the following:

2172

2173 4.1. Provide *automatic sprinkler system* protection.

2174 4.2. Provide a heat detection system throughout the *attic* that is
2175 arranged to activate the building fire alarm system.

2176 4.3. Construct the *attic* using non-combustible materials.

2177 4.4. Construct the *attic* using *fire-retardant-treated wood*
2178 complying with Section 2303.2 of the Dallas Building Code.

2179 4.5. Fill the *attic* with noncombustible insulation.

2180

2181 **Carryover COG Amendment**

2182 **[F] 903.3.1.3 NFPA 13D sprinkler systems.** *Automatic sprinkler systems* installed in one-
2183 and two-family *dwelling*s; Group R-3, Group R-4 Condition 1 and *townhouses* shall be
2184 permitted to be installed throughout in accordance with NFPA 13D or in accordance with
2185 state law. Refer also to Section 903.3.1.1.2.

2186

2187 **[F] 903.3.1.4 Freeze protection.** Freeze protection systems for automatic fire sprinkler
2188 systems shall be in accordance with the requirements of the applicable referenced NFPA
2189 standard and this section.

2190

2191 **903.3.1.4.1 Attics.** Only dry-pipe, pre-action or listed antifreeze automatic fire
2192 sprinkler systems shall be allowed to protect attic spaces.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2193 **Exception:** Wet-pipe fire sprinkler systems shall be allowed to protect non-ventilated
2194 attic spaces where:
2195

2196 1. the attic sprinklers are supplied by a separate floor control valve assembly to
2197 allow ease of draining the attic system without impairing sprinklers throughout
2198 the rest of the building,
2199

2200 2. adequate heat is provided for freeze protection in accordance with the applicable
2201 referenced NFPA standard, and
2202

2203 3. the attic space is a part of the building's thermal, or heat, envelope, such that
2204 insulation is provided at the roof deck, rather than at the ceiling level.
2205

2206 **903.3.1.4.2 Heat trace/insulation.** Heat trace/insulation shall only be allowed where
2207 approved by the fire code official for small sections of large diameter water-filled pipe.
2208

2209 **[F] 903.3.2 Quick-response and residential sprinklers.** Where *automatic sprinkler systems*
2210 are required by this code, quick-response or residential automatic sprinklers shall be installed
2211 in the following areas in accordance with Section 903.3.1 and their listings:
2212

2213 1. Throughout all spaces within a smoke compartment containing care recipient *sleeping*
2214 *units* in Group I-2 in accordance with this code.
2215

2216 2. Throughout all spaces within a *smoke compartment containing* gas fireplace appliances
2217 and decorative gas appliances in Group I-2.
2218

2219 3. Throughout all spaces within a smoke compartment containing treatment rooms in
2220 ambulatory care facilities.
2221

2222 4. *Dwelling units* and *sleeping units* in Group I-1 and R occupancies.
2223

2224 5. Light-hazard occupancies as defined in NFPA 13.
2225

2226 **[F] 903.3.3 Obstructed locations.** Automatic sprinklers shall be installed with regard to
2227 obstructions that will delay activation or obstruct the water distribution pattern and shall be in
2228 accordance with the applicable *automatic sprinkler system* standard that is being used.
2229 Automatic sprinklers shall be installed in or under covered kiosks, displays, booths, concession
2230 stands, or equipment that exceeds 4 feet (1219 mm) in width. Not less than a 3-foot (914 mm)
2231 clearance shall be maintained between automatic sprinklers and the top of piles of combustible
2232 fibers.
2233

2234 **Exception:** Kitchen equipment under exhaust hoods protected with a fire-extinguishing
2235 system in accordance with Section 904.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2236 [F] **903.3.4 Actuation.** *Automatic sprinkler systems* shall be automatically actuated unless
2237 specifically provided for in this code.
2238

2239 [F] **903.3.5 Water supplies.** Water supplies for *automatic sprinkler systems* shall comply with
2240 this section and the standards referenced in Section 903.3.1. The potable water supply shall be
2241 protected against backflow in accordance with the requirements of this section and the *Dallas*
2242 [~~*International*~~] *Plumbing Code*. For connections to public waterworks systems, the water
2243 supply test used for design of fire protection systems shall be adjusted to account for seasonal
2244 and daily pressure fluctuations based on information from the water supply authority and as
2245 approved by the fire code official.
2246

2247 **Carryover COG Amendment**

2248 Water supply as required for such systems shall be provided in conformance with the supply
2249 requirements of the respective standards; however, every fire protection system shall be
2250 designed with a 10 psi (69 Pa) safety factor. Where a waterflow test is used for the purposes
2251 of system design, the test shall be conducted no more than 12 months prior to working plan
2252 submittal unless otherwise approved by the authority having jurisdiction. Refer to Section
2253 507.4 for additional design requirements.
2254

2255 [F] **903.3.5.1 Domestic services.** Where the domestic service provides the water supply
2256 for the *automatic sprinkler system*, the supply shall be in accordance with this section.

2257 [F] **903.3.5.2 [~~Residential-e~~] Combination services.** In all NFPA 13 and 13R designs,
2258 a[A] single combination water supply shall be allowed provided that the domestic demand
2259 is added to the sprinkler demand as required by NFPA 13, 13R, and 13D. Combination
2260 services four inches and larger shall be subject to the acceptance tests contained in the
2261 installation standards. Acceptance tests shall be witnessed and approved by the fire code
2262 official.
2263

2264 [F] **903.3.6 Hose threads.** Fire hose threads and fittings used in connection with *automatic*
2265 *sprinkler systems* shall be as prescribed by the fire code official.
2266

2267 [F] **903.3.7 Fire department connections.** Fire department connections for *automatic*
2268 *sprinkler systems* shall be installed in accordance with Section 912.
2269

2270 [F] **903.3.8 Limited area sprinkler systems.** Limited area sprinkler systems shall be in
2271 accordance with the standards listed in Section 903.3.1 except as provided in Sections
2272 903.3.8.1 through 903.3.8.5.
2273

2274 **903.3.8.1 Number of sprinklers.** Limited area sprinkler systems shall not exceed six
2275 sprinklers in any single *fire area*.
2276

2277 **903.3.8.2 Occupancy hazard classification.** Only areas classified by NFPA 13 as Light
2278 Hazard or Ordinary Hazard Group 1 shall be permitted to be protected by limited area
2279 sprinkler systems.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2280 **903.3.8.3 Piping arrangement.** Where a limited area sprinkler system is installed in a
2281 building with an automatic wet standpipe system, sprinklers shall be supplied by the
2282 standpipe system. Where a limited area sprinkler system is installed in a building without
2283 an automatic wet standpipe system, water shall be permitted to be supplied by the plumbing
2284 system provided that the plumbing system is capable of simultaneously supplying domestic
2285 and sprinkler demands.

2286
2287 **903.3.8.4 Supervision.** Control valves shall not be installed between the water supply and
2288 sprinklers unless the valves are of an *approved* indicating type that are supervised or
2289 secured in the open position.

2290
2291 **903.3.8.5 Calculations.** Hydraulic calculations in accordance with NFPA 13 shall be
2292 provided to demonstrate that the available water flow and pressure are adequate to supply
2293 all sprinklers installed in any single *fire area* with discharge densities corresponding to the
2294 hazard classification.”

2295 2296 **Carryover COG Amendments**

2297 **57. Subsection [F] 903.4, “Sprinkler System Supervision and Alarms,” of Section**

2298 **903, “Automatic Sprinkler Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021**

2299 **International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

2300 “[F] 903.4 Sprinkler system supervision and alarms. All v[~~X~~]alves on the building side of the
2301 water meter controlling the water supply for *automatic sprinkler systems*, pumps, tanks, water
2302 levels and temperatures, critical air pressures and waterflow switches on all sprinkler systems shall
2303 be electrically supervised by a *listed* fire alarm control unit.

2304 2305 **Exceptions:**

- 2306
2307 1. *Automatic sprinkler systems* protecting one- and two-family *dwelling*s.
2308
2309 2. Limited area sprinkler systems in accordance with Section 903.3.8.
2310
2311 3. *Automatic sprinkler systems* installed in accordance with NFPA 13R where a common
2312 supply main is used to supply both domestic water and the *automatic sprinkler system*,
2313 and a separate shutoff valve for the *automatic sprinkler system* is not provided.
2314
2315 4. Jockey pump control valves that are sealed or locked in the open position.
2316
2317 5. Control valves to commercial kitchen hoods, paint spray booths or dip tanks that are
2318 sealed or locked in the open position.
2319
2320 6. Valves controlling the fuel supply to fire pump engines that are sealed or locked in the
2321 open position.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2322 7. Trim valves to pressure switches in dry, preaction and deluge sprinkler systems that are
2323 sealed or locked in the open position.

2324
2325 8. Underground key or hub gate valves in roadway boxes.
2326

2327 Sprinkler and standpipe system water-flow detectors must be provided for each floor tap to the
2328 sprinkler system and must cause an alarm upon detection of water flow for more than 45 seconds.
2329 All control valves in the sprinkler and standpipe systems except for fire department hose
2330 connection valves must be electrically supervised to initiate a supervisory signal at the central
2331 station upon tampering.
2332

2333 [F] 903.4.1 **Monitoring.** Alarm, supervisory and trouble signals shall be distinctly different
2334 and shall be automatically transmitted to an *approved* supervising station or, where *approved*
2335 by the fire code official, shall sound an audible signal at a *constantly attended location*.
2336

2337 **Exceptions:**

- 2338
- 2339 1. Underground key or hub valves in roadway boxes provided by the municipality or
2340 public utility are not required to be monitored.
2341
 - 2342 2. Backflow prevention device test valves located in limited area sprinkler system
2343 supply piping shall be locked in the open position. In occupancies required to be
2344 equipped with a fire alarm system, the backflow preventer valves shall be
2345 electrically supervised by a tamper switch installed in accordance with NFPA 72
2346 and separately annunciated.
2347

2348 [F] 903.4.2 **Alarms.** A weatherproof horn/strobe notification appliance with a minimum 75
2349 candela strobe rating, installed as close as practicable to the fire department connection [~~An~~
2350 ~~approved audible device, located on the exterior of the building in an approved location,~~] shall
2351 be connected to every [each] automatic sprinkler system. Such sprinkler waterflow alarm
2352 devices shall be activated by water flow equivalent to the flow of a single sprinkler of the
2353 smallest orifice size installed in the system. Where a fire alarm system is installed, actuation
2354 of the *automatic sprinkler system* shall actuate the building fire alarm system.
2355

2356 [F] 903.4.3 **Floor control valves.** *Approved* supervised indicating control valves shall be
2357 provided at the point of connection to the riser on each floor in high-rise-buildings.”
2358

2359 [F] 903.5 **Testing and maintenance.** Sprinkler systems shall be tested and maintained in
2360 accordance with the [*International*] Dallas Fire Code.
2361

2362 **Carryover COG Amendments**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2363 **58. Subsection [F] 905.2, “Installation Standard,” of Section 905, “Standpipe**
2364 **Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code**
2365 **is amended to read as follows:**

2366 “[F] **905.2 Installation standard.** Standpipe systems shall be installed in accordance with this
2367 section and NFPA 14. Manual dry standpipe systems shall be supervised with a minimum of 10
2368 psig (69 kPa) and a maximum of 40 psig (276 kPa) air pressure with a high/low alarm. Fire
2369 department connections for standpipe systems shall be in accordance with Section 912.”

2370

2371 **Carryover COG Amendments**

2372 **59. Subsection [F] 905.3, “Required Installations,” of Section 905, “Standpipe**
2373 **Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code**
2374 **is amended to read as follows:**

2375 “[F] **905.3 Required installations.** Standpipe systems shall be installed where required by
2376 Sections 905.3.1 through 905.3.9 [~~905.3.8~~]. Standpipe systems are allowed to be combined with
2377 *automatic sprinkler systems*.

2378

2379 **Exception:** Standpipe systems are not required in Group R-3 occupancies.

2380

2381 **[F] 905.3.1 Height.** Class III standpipe systems shall be installed throughout buildings where
2382 any of the following conditions exist:

2383

- 2384 1. Four or more stories are above or below grade plane.
- 2385 2. The floor level of the highest *story* is located more than 30 feet (9144 mm) above the
- 2386 lowest level of fire department vehicle access.
- 2387 3. The floor level of the lowest story is located more than 30 feet (9144 mm) below the
- 2388 highest level of fire department vehicle access.

2389

2390

2391

2392 **Exceptions:**

2393

- 2394 1. Class I standpipes are allowed in buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic*
- 2395 *sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.
- 2396 2. Class I standpipes are allowed in Group B and E occupancies.
- 2397 3. Class I manual standpipes are allowed in parking garages.

2398

2399

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 2400 4. Class I standpipes are allowed in basements equipped throughout with an *automatic*
2401 *sprinkler system*.
2402
2403 5. Class I standpipes are allowed in buildings where occupant-use hose lines will not
2404 be utilized by trained personnel or the fire department.
2405
2406 6. In determining the lowest level of fire department vehicle access, it shall not be
2407 required to consider either of the following:

2408
2409 6.1 Recessed loading docks for four vehicles or less.

2410
2411 6.2 Conditions where topography makes access from the fire department
2412 vehicle to the building impractical or impossible.
2413

2414 **[F] 905.3.2 Group A.** Class I automatic wet standpipes shall be provided in nonsprinklered
2415 Group A buildings having an *occupant load* exceeding 1,000 persons.

2416 **[Exceptions:**

- 2417
2418
2419 1. ~~Open air seating spaces without enclosed spaces.~~
2420
2421 2. ~~Class I automatic dry and semiautomatic dry standpipes or manual wet standpipes~~
2422 ~~are allowed in buildings that are not high-rise buildings.]~~
2423

2424 **[F] 905.3.3 Covered and open mall buildings.** Covered mall and open mall buildings shall
2425 be equipped throughout with a standpipe system where required by Section 905.3.1. Mall
2426 buildings not required to be equipped with a standpipe system by Section 905.3.1 shall be
2427 equipped with Class I hose connections connected to the *automatic sprinkler system* sized to
2428 deliver water at 250 gallons per minute (946.4 L/min) at the most hydraulically remote hose
2429 connection while concurrently supplying the automatic sprinkler system demand. The
2430 standpipe system shall be designed to not exceed a 50 pounds per square inch (psi) (345 kPa)
2431 residual pressure loss with a flow of 250 gallons per minute (946.4 L/min) from the fire
2432 department connection to the hydraulically most remote hose connection. Hose connections
2433 shall be provided at each of the following locations:

- 2434
2435 1. Within the mall at the entrance to each *exit* passageway or *corridor*.
2436
2437 2. At each floor-level landing within *interior exit stairways* opening directly on the mall.
2438
2439 3. At exterior public entrances to the mall of a covered mall building.
2440
2441 4. At public entrances at the perimeter line of an open mall building.
2442
2443 5. At other locations as necessary so that the distance to reach all portions of a tenant
2444 space does not exceed 200 feet (60 960 mm) from a hose connection.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2445 [F] **905.3.4 Stages.** *Stages* greater than 1,000 square feet in area (93 m²) shall be equipped
2446 with a Class III wet standpipe system with 1½-inch and 2½ -inch (38 mm and 64 mm) hose
2447 connections on each side of the stage.

2448
2449 **Exception:** Where the building or area is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler*
2450 *system*, a 1½-inch (38 mm) hose connection shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 13
2451 or in accordance with NFPA 14 for Class II or III standpipes.

2452
2453 [F] **905.3.4.1 Hose and cabinet.** The 1½-inch (38 mm) hose connections shall be equipped
2454 with sufficient lengths of 1½-inch (38 mm) hose to provide fire protection for the stage
2455 area. Hose connections shall be equipped with an *approved* adjustable fog nozzle and be
2456 mounted in a cabinet or on a rack.

2457
2458 [F] **905.3.5 Underground buildings.** Underground buildings shall be equipped throughout
2459 with a Class I automatic wet or manual wet standpipe system.

2460
2461 [F] **905.3.6 Helistops and heliports.** Buildings with a rooftop *helistop* or *heliport* shall be
2462 equipped with a Class I or III standpipe system extended to the roof level on which the *helistop*
2463 or *heliport* is located in accordance with Section 2007.5 of the *Dallas [International] Fire*
2464 *Code*.

2465
2466 [F] **905.3.7 Marinas and boatyards.** Standpipes in marinas and boatyards shall comply with
2467 Chapter 36 of the *Dallas [International] Fire Code*.

2468
2469 [F] **905.3.8 Landscaped roofs.** Buildings or structures that have landscaped roofs and that are
2470 equipped with a standpipe system shall have the standpipe system extended to the roof level
2471 on which the rooftop garden or landscaped roof is located.

2472
2473 **905.3.9 Buildings exceeding 10,000 square feet.** In buildings exceeding 10,000 square feet
2474 (929.03 m²) per story, Class I automatic wet or manual wet standpipes must be provided where
2475 any portion of the building's interior area is more than 200 feet (60 960 mm) of travel,
2476 vertically and horizontally, from the nearest point of fire department vehicle access.
2477

2478 **Exceptions:**

2479
2480 1. Automatic dry and semi-automatic dry standpipes are allowed as provided for in
2481 NFPA 14 where approved by Fire Code Official.

2482
2483 2. R-2 occupancies of four stories or less in height having no interior corridors.”
2484

2485 **New COG Amendment added per Fire Code**

2486 **905.3.10 Buildings exceeding 500,000 square feet.** In buildings exceeding 500,000 square
2487 feet (46,451.52 m²) see Fire Fighter Air Replenishment Systems Section L101.1 of the Dallas
2488 Fire Code.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2489 **Carryover COG Amendment**

2490 **60. Subsection [F] 905.4, “Location of Class I Standpipe Hose Connections,” of**

2491 **Section 905, “Standpipe Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021**

2492 **International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

2493 **“[F] 905.4 Location of Class I standpipe hose connections.** Class I standpipe hose connections
2494 shall be provided in all of the following locations:

2495
2496 1. In every required [~~interior~~] *exit stairway*, a hose connection shall be provided for each story
2497 above or below grade plane. Hose connections shall be located at the main floor landing
2498 unless otherwise *approved* by the fire code official.

2499
2500 **Exception:** A single hose connection shall be permitted to be installed in the open corridor
2501 or open breezeway between open stairs that are not greater than 75 feet (22 860 mm) apart.

2502
2503 2. On each side of the wall adjacent to the *exit* opening of a *horizontal exit*.

2504
2505 **Exception:** Where floor areas adjacent to a *horizontal exit* are reachable from an [~~interior~~]
2506 *exit stairway* hose connection by a 30-foot (9144 mm) hose stream from a nozzle attached
2507 to 100 feet (30 480 mm) of hose, a hose connection shall not be required at the *horizontal*
2508 *exit*.

2509
2510 3. In every *exit* passageway, at the entrance from the *exit* passageway to other areas of a
2511 building.

2512
2513 **Exception:** Where floor areas adjacent to an *exit* passageway are reachable from an
2514 [~~interior~~] *exit stairway* hose connection by a 30-foot (9144 mm) hose stream from a nozzle
2515 attached to 100 feet (30 480 mm) of hose, a hose connection shall not be required at the
2516 entrance from the *exit* passageway to other areas of the building.

2517
2518 4. In covered mall buildings, adjacent to each exterior public entrance to the mall and adjacent
2519 to each entrance from an exit passageway or exit corridor to the mall. In open mall
2520 buildings, adjacent to each public entrance to the mall at the perimeter line and adjacent to
2521 each entrance from an exit passageway or exit corridor to the mall.

2522
2523 5. Where the roof has a slope less than four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33.3-percent
2524 slope), each standpipe shall be provided with a two-way [a] hose connection [~~shall be~~]
2525 located to serve the roof or at the highest landing of an [~~interior~~] *exit stairway* with access
2526 to the roof provided in accordance with Section 1011.12.

2527
2528 6. Where the most remote portion of a nonsprinklered floor or *story* is more than 150 feet (45
2529 720 mm) from a hose connection or the most remote portion of a sprinklered floor or *story*

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2530 is more than 200 feet (60 960 mm) from a hose connection, the fire code official is
2531 authorized to require that additional hose connections be provided in *approved* locations.
2532

2533 7. When required by this chapter, standpipe connections shall be placed adjacent to all
2534 required exits to the structure and at 200 foot intervals along major corridors thereafter, or
2535 as otherwise approved by the fire code official.
2536

2537 **[F] 905.4.1 Protection.** Risers and laterals of Class I standpipe systems not located within an
2538 *interior exit stairway* shall be protected by a degree of *fire resistance* equal to that required for
2539 vertical enclosures in the building in which they are located.
2540

2541 **Exception:** In buildings equipped throughout with an *approved automatic sprinkler*
2542 *system*, laterals that are not located within an *interior exit stairway* are not required to be
2543 enclosed within fire-resistance-rated construction.
2544

2545 **[F] 905.4.2 Interconnection.** In buildings where more than one standpipe is provided, the
2546 standpipes shall be interconnected in accordance with NFPA 14.
2547

2548 **Carryover COG Amendment**

2549 **905.4.3 Additional requirements.** All Class I standpipes must be:
2550

2551 1. Filled with water at all times; or
2552

2553 2. Supervised with a minimum of 10 psig (69 kPa) air pressure with a high/low alarm.”
2554

2555 **New COG Amendment**

2556 **61. Subsection [F] 905.8, “Dry standpipes,” of Section 905, “Standpipe systems,”**
2557 **of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended**
2558 **to read as follows:**

2559 **“905.8 Dry standpipes.** Dry standpipes shall not be installed.
2560

2561 **Exception:** Where subject to freezing and in accordance with NFPA 14. Additionally,
2562 manual dry standpipe systems shall be supervised with a minimum of 10 psig and
2563 maximum of 40 psig air pressure with a high/low supervisory alarm.
2564

2565 **New COG Amendment**

2566 **62. Subsection [F] 905.9, “Valve supervision,” of Section 905, “Standpipe**
2567 **systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code**
2568 **is amended to read as follows:**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2569 **“905.9 Valve supervision.** Valves controlling water supplies shall be supervised in the
2570 open position so that a change in normal position of the valve will generate a supervisory
2571 signal at supervising station required by Section 903.4. Where a fire alarm system is
2572 provided, a signal shall be transmitted to the control unit.

2573 **Exceptions:**
2574 1. Valves to underground key or hub valves in roadway boxes do not require
2575 supervision.
2576 2. Valves locked in the normal position and inspected as provided in this code in
2577 buildings not equipped with a fire alarm system.
2578

2579
2580 Sprinkler and standpipe system water-flow detectors shall be provided for each floor tap to
2581 the sprinkler system and shall cause an alarm upon detection of water flow for more than
2582 45 seconds. All control valves in the sprinkler and standpipe systems except for fire
2583 department hose connection valves shall be electrically supervised to initiate a supervisory
2584 signal at the central station upon tampering.

2585 **Carryover COG amendment – IFC/DFC**

2586 **63. Section 905, “Standpipe Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of**
2587 **the 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new Subsection 905.12,**
2588 **“Standpipe Testing,” to read as follows:**

2589 **“905.12 Standpipe testing.** Building owners/managers shall use a licensed fire protection contractor
2590 to test and certify standpipe systems. In addition to the standpipe systems testing and maintenance
2591 requirements of NFPA 25, the following additional requirements shall be applied to the testing that is
2592 required every 5 years:

- 2593
- 2594 1. The piping between the fire department connection (FDC) and the standpipe shall be
2595 hydrostatically tested for all FDCs on any type of standpipe system. Hydrostatic testing shall
2596 also be conducted in accordance with NFPA 25 requirements for the different types of
2597 standpipe systems.
 - 2598 2. For any manual (dry or wet) standpipe system not having an automatic water supply capable
2599 of flowing water through the standpipe, the contractor shall connect a hose from a fire hydrant
2600 or portable pumping system (as approved by the fire code official) to each FDC, and flow
2601 water (at an approved rate and pressure) through the standpipe system to the roof outlet to
2602 verify that each inlet connection functions properly. Verify that check valves function properly
2603 and that there are no closed control valves on the system.
 - 2604 3. Any pressure relief, reducing, or control valves shall be tested in accordance with the
2605 requirements of NFPA 25.
- 2606
2607

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 2608 4. If the FDC is not already provided with approved caps, the contractor shall install such
2609 caps for all FDCs.
2610
- 2611 5. Upon successful completion of standpipe test, the contractor shall place an appropriate
2612 service tag as per the State of Texas provisions.
2613
- 2614 6. The contractor shall follow the procedures required by the State of Texas with regard to
2615 appropriate tags denoting noncompliance, impairment or any deficiencies noted during the
2616 testing, including the required notification of the local authority having jurisdiction.
2617
- 2618 7. Additionally, records of the testing shall be maintained by the owner and contractor, as
2619 required by the State of Texas and NFPA 25.
2620
- 2621 8. Standpipe system tests where water will be flowed external to the building shall not be
2622 conducted during freezing conditions or during the day prior to expected night time
2623 freezing conditions.
2624
- 2625 9. Contact the fire code official for requests to remove existing fire hose from Class II and III
2626 standpipe systems where employees are not trained in the utilization of this firefighting
2627 equipment. All standpipe hose valves must remain in place and be provided with an
2628 approved cap and chain when approval is given to remove hose by the fire code official.”
2629
2630
2631
2632

New COG amendment – IFC/DFC

2633 **64. Subsection [F] 906.1, “Where required,” of Section 906, “Portable Fire**
2634 **Extinguishers,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building**
2635 **Code is amended to read as follows:**
2636

2637 “[F] 906.1 Where required. Portable fire extinguishers shall be installed in all of the following
2638 locations:

- 2639
- 2640 1. In Group A, B, E, F, H, I, M, R-1, R-2, R-4 and S occupancies.
2641

Exceptions:

- 2642
- 2643 1. In Group R-2 occupancies, portable fire extinguishers shall be required only in
2644 locations specified in Item 2 through 6 where each dwelling unit is provided
2645 with a portable fire extinguisher having a minimum rating of 1-A:10-B:C.
2646

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 2647 2. In Group E occupancies, portable fire extinguishers shall be required only in
2648 locations specified in Items 2 through 6 where each classroom is provided with
2649 a portable fire extinguisher having a minimum rating of 2-A:20-B:C.
2650 3. ~~In storage areas of Group S Occupancies where forklift, powered industrial
2651 truck or powered cart operators are the primary occupants, fixed extinguishers,
2652 as specified in NFPA 10, shall not be required where in accordance with all of
2653 the following:~~
2654 ~~3.1 Use of vehicle-mounted extinguishers shall be approved by the fire code
2655 official.~~
2656 ~~3.2 Each vehicle shall be equipped with a 10-pound, 20A:80-B:C
2657 extinguisher affixed to the vehicle using a mounting bracket approved
2658 by the extinguisher manufacturer or the fire code official for vehicular
2659 use.~~
2660 ~~3.3 Not less than two spare extinguishers of equal or greater rating shall be
2661 available on site to replace a discharged extinguisher.~~
2662 ~~3.4 Vehicle operators shall be trained in the proper operation, use and
2663 inspection of extinguishers.~~
2664 ~~3.5 Inspections of vehicle-mounted extinguishers shall be performed daily.~~
2665
2666 2. Within 30 feet (9144 mm) distance of travel from commercial cooking equipment and
2667 from domestic cooking equipment in Group I-1; I-2, Condition 1; and R-2 college
2668 dormitory occupancies.
2669 3. In areas where flammable or *combustible liquids* are stored, used, or dispensed.
2670 4. On each floor of structures under construction, except Group R-3 occupancies, in
2671 accordance with Section 3315.1 of the *Dallas [International] Fire Code*.
2672 5. Where required by the *Dallas [International] Fire Code* section indicated in Table
2673 906.1.
2674 6. Special-hazard areas, including but not limited to laboratories, computer rooms and
2675 generator rooms, where required by the fire code official.

2676
2677 **Exception:** Portable fire extinguishers are not required at normally unmanned Group U
2678 occupancy buildings or structures where a portable fire extinguisher suitable to the hazard
2679 of the location is provided on the vehicle of visiting personnel.

2680 Carryover COG amendment – IFC/DFC

2681 **65. Subsection [F] 907.1, “General,” of Section 907, “Fire Alarm and Detection**
2682 **Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code**
2683 **is amended to read as follows:**

2684 “[F] 907.1 **General.** This section covers the application, installation, performance and
2685 maintenance of fire alarm systems and their components. Provisions of the *Dallas Fire Code*
2686 govern in the event of conflicts between this section and the corresponding section of the *Dallas*

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2687 Fire Code.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2688 [F] **907.1.1 Construction documents.** *Construction documents* for fire alarm systems shall
2689 be of sufficient clarity to indicate the location, nature and extent of the work proposed and
2690 show in detail that it will conform to the provisions of this code, the Dallas [International]
2691 Fire Code, and relevant laws, ordinances, rules and regulations, as determined by the fire code
2692 official.

2693
2694 [F] **907.1.2 Fire alarm shop drawings.** Shop drawings for fire alarm systems shall be in
2695 accordance with NFPA 72 and submitted for review and approval prior to system installation.
2696

2697 [F] **907.1.3 Equipment.** Systems and components shall be *listed* and *approved* for the purpose
2698 for which they are installed. Where such systems are installed, they must be designed, installed
2699 and maintained in accordance with this code and the applicable NFPA standards.
2700

2701 **907.1.3.1 Prohibited equipment.** Smoke generating devices activated by a burglar alarm,
2702 motion detector, tamper alarm or other type of intruder alarms are prohibited in all
2703 buildings.
2704

2705 **907.1.4 Design standards.** All new or replaced fire alarm systems (including fire alarm control
2706 panel replacements) must comply with the requirements of Section 907 and shall be
2707 addressable and in accordance with Section 907.6.3. Alarm systems utilizing more than 20
2708 alarm initiating devices shall be analog addressable.
2709

2710 **Exception:** Existing systems need not comply unless the total building or fire alarm system
2711 remodel or expansion initiated after the effective date of this code, as adopted, exceeds 30
2712 percent of the building area. When cumulative building remodel or expansion exceeds 50
2713 percent of the building area, all existing systems shall comply within 18 months of permit
2714 application. The owner or operator of the facility shall maintain documentation of the
2715 amount of fire alarm system remodel or expansion. The documentation must be submitted
2716 with each fire alarm system plan submittal or upon request from the fire code official.
2717

2718 **907.1.5 Area separation walls/fire walls.** Area separation walls/fire walls must not be used
2719 to reduce or eliminate fire alarm requirements.
2720

2721 **Exception:** Adjacent spaces are considered separate areas for fire alarm purposes if
2722 separated by minimum fire-rated construction as required in this code to define separate
2723 buildings. Separating walls cannot have openings that permit occupant communication
2724 between the spaces.”
2725

2726 Carryover DFC Amendment

2727 **66. Paragraph [F] 907.2.1, “Group A,” of Subsection [F] 907.2, “Where**
2728 **Required—New Buildings and Structures,” of Section 907, “Fire Alarm and Detection**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2729 **Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code**
2730 **is amended to read as follows:**

2731 **“[F] 907.2.1 Group A.** A manual fire alarm system and automatic fire detection in paths of
2732 egress that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall
2733 be installed in Group A occupancies [~~where the~~] having an occupant load [~~due to the assembly~~
2734 ~~occupancy is~~] of 300 or more persons, or where the [~~Group A~~] occupant load is more than 100
2735 persons above or below the *lowest level of exit discharge*. Group A occupancies not separated
2736 from one another in accordance with Section 707.3.10 shall be considered as a single
2737 occupancy for the purposes of applying this section. Portions of Group E occupancies occupied
2738 for assembly purposes shall be provided with a fire alarm system as required for the Group E
2739 occupancy.

2740

2741 Activation of fire alarm notification appliances must:
2742

- 2743 1. Cause illumination of the *means of egress* with light of not less than 1 foot candle
2744 (11 lux) at the walking surface level, and
- 2745 2. Stop any conflicting or confusing sounds and visual distractions.
2746

2747 **Exception:** Manual fire alarm boxes are not required where the building is equipped
2748 throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section
2749 903.3.1.1, and automatic fire detection in paths of egress, and the occupant notification
2750 appliances will activate throughout the notification zones upon sprinkler water flow.

2751

2752 **[F] 907.2.1.1 System initiation in Group A occupancies with an occupant load of 1,000**
2753 **or more.** Activation of the fire alarm in Group A occupancies with an *occupant load* of
2754 1,000 or more shall initiate a signal using an emergency voice/alarm communications
2755 system in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

2756

2757 **Exception:** Where *approved*, the prerecorded announcement is allowed to be manually
2758 deactivated for a period of time, not to exceed 3 minutes, for the sole purpose of
2759 allowing a live voice announcement from an *approved, constantly attended location*.

2760

2761 **[F] 907.2.1.2 Emergency voice/alarm communication captions.** Stadiums, arenas and
2762 grandstands required to caption audible public announcements shall be in accordance with
2763 Section 907.5.2.2.4.”

2764

2765 **Carryover DFC Amendment**

2766 **67. Paragraph [F] 907.2.2, “Group B,” of Subsection [F] 907.2, “Where**

2767 **Required—New Buildings and Structures,” of Section 907, “Fire Alarm and Detection**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2768 **Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code**
2769 **is amended to read as follows:**

2770 “[F] 907.2.2 Group B. A manual fire alarm system, which activates the occupant notification
2771 system in accordance with Section 907.5, and automatic fire detection in paths of egress shall
2772 be installed in Group B occupancies where one of the following conditions exists:

- 2773
- 2774 1. The combined Group B *occupant load* of all floors is 500 or more.
 - 2775 2. The Group B *occupant load* is more than 100 persons above or below the lowest *level*
2776 *of exit discharge*.
 - 2777 3. The *fire area* contains an *ambulatory care facility*.

2778

2779 **Exception:** Manual fire alarm boxes and automatic fire detection in paths of egress are
2780 not required where the building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system*
2781 installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and the occupant notification appliances will
2782 activate throughout the notification zones upon sprinkler water flow.

2783

2784 [F] 907.2.2.1 **Ambulatory care facilities.** *Fire areas* containing *ambulatory care facilities*
2785 shall be provided with an electronically supervised automatic smoke detection system
2786 installed within the *ambulatory care facility* and in *public use areas* outside of tenant
2787 spaces, including public *corridors* and elevator lobbies.

2788

2789 [~~Exception: Buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in
2790 accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, provided the occupant notification appliances will
2791 activate throughout the notification zones upon sprinkler water flow.~~]

2793 Carryover DFC Amendment

2794 **68. Paragraph [F] 907.2.3, “Group E,” of Subsection [F] 907.2, “Where**
2795 **Required—New Buildings and Structures,” of Section 907, “Fire Alarm and Detection**
2796 **Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code**
2797 **is amended to read as follows:**

2798 “[F] 907.2.3 Group E. A manual fire alarm system and automatic fire detection in paths of
2799 egress that initiates the occupant notification signal utilizing an emergency voice/alarm
2800 communication system meeting the requirements of Section 907.5.2.2 and installed in
2801 accordance with Section 907.6 shall be installed in Group E educational occupancies. Group
2802 E day care occupancies shall have a smoke detector in all areas used by children. Where
2803 *automatic sprinkler systems* or smoke detectors are installed, such systems or detectors shall
2804 be connected to the building fire alarm system. Unless separated by a minimum of 100 feet
2805 (30 480 mm) of open space, all buildings, whether portable buildings or the main building, will
2806 be considered one building for fire alarm *occupant load* consideration and interconnection of

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2807

alarm systems.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2808
2809
2810
2811
2812

2813
2814
2815
2816

2817
2818
2819
2820
2821
2822
2823
2824
2825
2826
2827
2828
2829
2830
2831
2832
2833
2834
2835
2836
2837
2838
2839
2840
2841
2842
2843
2844
2845
2846
2847
2848
2849
2850
2851

2852
2853
2854

2855
2856

2857

2858

Exceptions:

1. A manual fire alarm system with automatic fire detection in paths of egress shall not be required in Group E educational and day care occupancies with an *occupant load* of 30 [~~50~~] or less when provided with an approved automatic sprinkler system.
 - 1.1 Residential in-home day care with not more than 12 children may use interconnected single station detectors in all habitable rooms. (For care of more than five children 2½ years of age or younger, see Section 907.2.6)
2. Emergency voice/alarm communication systems meeting the requirements of Section 907.5.2.2 and installed in accordance with Section 907.6 shall not be required in Group E occupancies with occupant loads of 100 or less, provided that activation of the manual fire alarm system initiates an *approved* occupant notification signal in accordance with Section 907.5.
3. [~~Manual fire alarm boxes shall not be required in Group E occupancies where all of the following apply:~~
 - 3.1 ~~Interior corridors are protected by smoke detectors.~~
 - 3.2 ~~Auditoriums, cafeterias, gymnasiums and similar areas are protected by heat detectors or other approved detection devices.~~
 - 3.3 ~~Shops and laboratories involving dusts or vapors are protected by heat detectors or other approved detection devices.]~~
 - 3.4 ~~Manual activation is provided from normally occupied location~~
3. [~~4.~~] Manual fire alarm boxes and fire detection in paths of egress shall not be required in Group E educational occupancies where all of the following apply:
 - 3.1[~~4.1~~]. The building is equipped throughout with an *approved automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
 - 3.2 [~~4.2~~]. The emergency voice/alarm communication system will activate on sprinkler waterflow.
 - 3.3[~~4.3~~]. Manual activation is provided from a normally occupied location.

907.2.3.1 Exterior alarm-signaling device. Alarm-sharing devices must be mounted on the exterior of the building in all common use/gathering areas.”

Carryover DFC Amendment

69. Paragraph [F] 907.2.6, “Group I,” of Subsection [F] 907.2, “Where Required—New Buildings and Structures,” of Section 907, “Fire Alarm and Detection Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2859 is amended by adding a **new** Subparagraph 907.2.6.4, “Institutional Group I-4 Day Care
2860 Facilities,” to read as follows:

2861 “907.2.6.4 Group I-4 day care facilities. A manual fire alarm system and automatic fire
2862 detection in paths of egress that activates the occupant notification system in accordance
2863 with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group I-4 day care facility occupancies. Group I-
2864 4 day care facility occupancies shall have smoke detectors in all areas used by children.
2865 When *automatic sprinkler systems* or smoke detectors are installed, such systems or
2866 detectors shall be connected to the building fire alarm system.”

2867

2868 Carryover DFC Amendment

2869 70. Paragraph [F] 907.2.7, “Group M,” of Subsection [F] 907.2, “Where
2870 Required—New Buildings and Structures,” of Section 907, “Fire Alarm and Detection
2871 Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code
2872 is amended to read as follows:

2873 “[F] 907.2.7 Group M. A manual fire alarm system and an automatic fire protection system
2874 in paths of ingress that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section
2875 907.5 shall be installed in Group M occupancies where one of the following conditions exists:

2876

- 2877 1. The combined Group M *occupant load* of all floors is 500 or more persons.
2878 2. The Group M *occupant load* is more than 100 persons above or below the lowest *level*
2879 *of exit discharge*.

2880

2881 Exceptions:

- 2882 1. A manual fire alarm system is not required in *covered or open mall buildings*
2883 *complying with Section 402*.
2884 2. Manual fire alarm boxes and an automatic fire detection system in paths of egress
2885 *are not required where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic*
2886 *sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and the occupant
2887 notification appliances will automatically activate throughout the notification zones
2888 upon sprinkler waterflow.

2889

2890 [F] 907.2.7.1 Occupant notification. During times that the building is occupied, the
2891 initiation of a signal from a manual fire alarm box, [Ø] from a waterflow switch or
2892 automatic fire detection system shall not be required to activate the alarm notification
2893 appliances when an alarm signal is activated at a *constantly attended location* from which
2894 evacuation instructions shall be initiated over an emergency voice/alarm communication
2895 system installed in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.”

2896

2897 New COG/DFC Amendment

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2898 71. Paragraph [F] 907.2.10, “Group S,” of Subsection [F] 907.2, “Where
2899 Required—New Buildings and Structures,” of Section 907, “Fire Alarm and Detection
2900 Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code
2901 is amended to read as follows:

2902 “[F] 907.2.7 Group S. A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system
2903 in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group S public- and self-storage occupancies
2904 ~~three stories or greater in height~~ for interior corridors and interior common areas. Visible
2905 notification appliances are not required within storage units.

2906 **Exception:** Manual fire alarm boxes are not required where the building is equipped
2907 throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section
2908 903.3.1.1, and the occupant notification appliances will activate throughout the notification
2909 zones upon sprinkler water flow.

2912 Carryover COG/DFC Amendment

2913 72. Paragraph [F] 907.2.13, “High-Rise Buildings,” of Subsection [F] 907.2,
2914 “Where Required—New Buildings and Structures,” of Section 907, “Fire Alarm and
2915 Detection Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International
2916 Building Code is amended to read as follows:

2917 “[F] 907.2.13 High-rise buildings. ~~[High-rise]~~ B[b]uildings with a floor used for human
2918 occupancy located more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above the lowest level of fire department
2919 vehicle access shall be provided with an automatic smoke detection/fire alarm system in
2920 accordance with Section 907.2.13.1, a fire department communication system in accordance
2921 with Section 907.2.13.2 and an emergency voice/alarm communication system in accordance
2922 with Section 907.5.2.2.

2924 Exceptions:

- 2925 1. Airport traffic control towers in accordance with Sections 412 and 907.2.22.
- 2926 2. *Open parking garages* in accordance with Section 406.5.
- 2927 3. Open air portions of b[B]uildings with an occupancy in Group A-5 in accordance
2928 with Section 303.6, however this exception does not apply to enclosed concourses
2929 or accessory use areas including, but not limited to, skyboxes, restaurants and
2930 similarly enclosed areas [303.1].
- 2931 4. Low-hazard special occupancies in accordance with Section 503.1.1.
- 2932 5. Buildings with an occupancy in Group H-1, H-2 or H-3 in accordance with Section
2933 415.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2934 6. In Group I-1 and I-2 occupancies, the alarm shall sound at a *constantly attended*
2935 *location* and occupant notification shall be broadcast by the emergency voice/alarm
2936 communication system.
2937

2938 [F] **907.2.13.1 Automatic smoke detection.** Automatic smoke detection in high-rise
2939 buildings shall be in accordance with Sections 907.2.12.1.1 and 907.2.12.1.2.
2940

2941 [F] **907.2.13.1.1 Area smoke detection.** Area smoke detectors shall be provided in
2942 accordance with this section. Smoke detectors shall be connected to an automatic fire
2943 alarm system. The activation of any detector required by this section shall activate the
2944 emergency voice/alarm communication system in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.
2945 In addition to smoke detectors required by Sections 907.2.1 through 907.2.9, smoke
2946 detectors shall be located as follows:
2947

- 2948 1. In each mechanical equipment, electrical transformer, telephone equipment or
2949 similar room which is not provided with sprinkler protection.
- 2950 2. In each elevator machine room, machinery room, control room and control
2951 space and in elevator lobbies.
- 2952 3. In all interior corridors serving as a means of egress for an occupant load of 10
2953 or more in Group R-1 and R-2 occupancies.
2954

2955 [M] **907.2.13.1.2 Duct smoke detection.** Duct smoke detectors complying with
2956 Section 907.3.1 shall be located ~~as follows:~~
2957

2958 ~~4.] i[[]]n the main return air and exhaust air plenum of each air-conditioning system~~
2959 ~~having a capacity greater than 2,000 cubic feet per minute (cfm) (0.94 m³/s).~~
2960 ~~Such detectors shall be located in a serviceable area downstream of the last duct~~
2961 ~~inlet and per NFPA 72. The actuation of any such detector must shut down the~~
2962 ~~affected air-handling units or operate dampers to prevent the recirculation of~~
2963 ~~smoke. Controls allowing the manual restarting of air-handling equipment~~
2964 ~~during an alarm condition must be provided.~~

2965 ~~[2. At each connection to a vertical duct or riser serving two or more stories from~~
2966 ~~a return air duct or plenum of an air-conditioning system. In Group R-1 and R-~~
2967 ~~2 occupancies, a smoke detector is allowed to be used in each return air riser~~
2968 ~~carrying not more than 5,000 cfm (2.4 m³/s) and serving not more than 10 air-~~
2969 ~~inlet openings.]~~
2970

2971 [F] **907.2.13.2 Fire department communication system.** Where a wired communication
2972 system is *approved in lieu of an in-building two-way* emergency responder radio coverage
2973 system in accordance with Section 510 of the *Dallas [International] Fire Code*, the wired
2974 fire department communication system shall be designed and installed in accordance with
2975 NFPA 72 and shall operate between a fire command center complying with Section 911,
2976 elevators, elevator lobbies, emergency and standby power rooms, fire pump rooms, *areas*
2977 *of refuge* and inside *interior exit stairways*. The fire department communication device
2978 shall be provided at each floor level within the *interior exit stairway*. The wired

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2979 communication system and required appurtenances shall be maintained in an operable
2980 condition at all times.”
2981

2982 **Carryover COG/DFC Amendment**

2983 **73. Paragraph [F] 907.4.2, “Manual Fire Alarm Boxes,” of Subsection [F] 907.4,**
2984 **“Initiating Devices,” of Section 907, “Fire Alarm and Detection Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire**
2985 **Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

2986 **“[F] 907.4.2 Manual fire alarm boxes.** Where a manual fire alarm system is required by
2987 another section of this code, it shall be activated by alarm boxes installed in accordance with
2988 Sections 907.4.2.1 through 907.4.2.6. Manual fire alarm actuating devices must be an
2989 approved double action type.
2990

2991 **[F] 907.4.2.1 Location.** Manual fire alarm boxes shall be located not more than 5 feet
2992 (1524 mm) from the entrance to each *exit*. In buildings not protected by an *automatic*
2993 *sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, additional manual fire
2994 alarm boxes shall be located so that the distance of travel to the nearest box does not exceed
2995 200 feet (60 960 mm).
2996

2997 **[F] 907.4.2.2 Height.** The height of the manual fire alarm boxes shall be not less than 42
2998 inches (1067 mm) and not more than 48 inches (1372 mm) measured vertically, from the
2999 floor level to the activating handle or lever of the box.
3000

3001 **[F] 907.4.2.3 Color.** Manual fire alarm boxes shall be red in color.
3002

3003 **Exception:** Other colors may be acceptable if red does not provide a contrast with the
3004 surrounding background, when approved by the fire code official.
3005

3006 **[F] 907.4.2.4 Signs.** Where approved existing fire alarm systems are not monitored by an
3007 *approved* supervising station in accordance with Section 907.6.6, an *approved* permanent
3008 sign shall be installed adjacent to each manual fire alarm box that reads: WHEN ALARM
3009 SOUNDS CALL FIRE DEPARTMENT.
3010

3011 **Exception:** Where the manufacturer has permanently provided this information on the
3012 manual fire alarm box.
3013

3014 **[F] 907.4.2.5 Protective covers.** The fire code official is authorized to require the
3015 installation of *listed* manual fire alarm box protective covers to prevent malicious false
3016 alarms or to provide the manual fire alarm box with protection from physical damage. The
3017 protective cover shall be transparent or red in color with a transparent face to permit
3018 visibility of the manual fire alarm box. Each cover shall include proper operating
3019 instructions. A protective cover that emits a local alarm signal shall not be installed unless

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3020 *approved by the fire code official.* Protective covers shall not project more than that
3021 permitted by Section 1003.3.3.

3022
3023 [F] 907.4.2.6 Unobstructed and unobscured. Manual fire alarm boxes shall be
3024 accessible, unobstructed, unobscured and visible at all times.”

3025
3026 **Carryover COG/DFC Amendment**

3027 **74. Subparagraph [F] 907.5.2.2, “Emergency Voice/Alarm Communication**
3028 **Systems,” of Paragraph [F] 907.5.2, “Alarm Notification Appliances,” of Subsection [F]**
3029 **907.5, “Occupant Notification Systems,” of Section 907, “Fire Alarm and Detection**
3030 **Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code**
3031 **is amended to read as follows:**

3032 “[F] 907.5.2.2 **Emergency voice/alarm communication systems.** Emergency voice/alarm
3033 communication systems required by this code shall be designed and installed in accordance
3034 with NFPA 72. The operation of any automatic fire detector, sprinkler waterflow device or
3035 manual fire alarm box shall automatically sound an alert tone followed by voice instructions
3036 giving *approved* information and directions for a general or staged evacuation in
3037 accordance with the building’s fire safety and evacuation plans required by Section 404 of
3038 the *Dallas [International] Fire Code*. In high-rise buildings, the system shall operate on at
3039 least the alarming floor, the floor above and the floor below and identify on an annunciator
3040 the zone or address from which the alarm signal originated. Speakers shall be provided
3041 throughout the building by paging zones. At a minimum, paging zones shall be provided
3042 as follows:

- 3043
3044 1. Elevator groups.
3045 2. *Interior exit stairways*.
3046 3. Each floor.
3047 4. *Areas of refuge* as defined in Chapter 2.

3048
3049 **Exception:** In Group I-1 and I-2 occupancies, the alarm shall sound in a constantly
3050 attended area and a general occupant notification shall be broadcast over the overhead
3051 page.

3052
3053 [F] 907.5.2.2.1 **Manual override.** A manual override for emergency voice
3054 communication shall be provided on a selective and all-call basis for all paging zones.

3055
3056 [F] 907.5.2.2.2 **Live voice messages.** The emergency voice/alarm communication
3057 system shall have the capability to broadcast live voice messages by paging zones on a
3058 selective and all-call basis.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3059 [F] 907.5.2.2.3 **Alternate uses.** The emergency voice/alarm communication system
3060 shall be allowed to be used for other announcements, provided the manual fire alarm
3061 use takes precedence over any other use.

3062
3063 [F] 907.5.2.2.4 **Emergency voice/alarm communication captions.** Where stadiums,
3064 arenas and grandstands have 15,000 fixed seats or more and provide audible public
3065 announcements, the emergency/voice alarm communication system shall provide
3066 prerecorded or real-time captions. Prerecorded or live emergency captions shall be
3067 from an *approved* location constantly attended by personnel trained to respond to an
3068 emergency.

3069
3070 [F] 907.5.2.2.5 **Standby power.** Emergency voice/alarm communications systems
3071 shall be provided with standby power in accordance with Section 2702.

3072
3073 **Carryover DFC Amendment**
3074 **75. Subparagraph [F] 907.5.2.3, “Visible Alarms,” of Paragraph [F] 907.5.2,**
3075 **“Alarm Notification Appliances,” of Subsection [F] 907.5, “Occupant Notification Systems,”**
3076 **of Section 907, “Fire Alarm and Detection Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection**
3077 **Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

3078 “[F] 907.5.2.3 **Visible alarms.** Visible alarm notification appliances shall be provided in
3079 accordance with Sections 907.5.2.3.1 through 907.5.2.3.3. Visual alarm notification
3080 appliances must be provided where an existing fire alarm system is upgraded, altered or a
3081 new fire alarm system is installed.
3082

3083 **Exceptions:**

- 3084
- 3085 1. Visible alarm notification appliances are not required in storage areas of Group
3086 S occupancies [~~alterations, except where an existing fire alarm system is~~
3087 ~~upgraded or replaced, or a new fire alarm system is installed~~].
 - 3088 2. Visible alarm notification appliances shall not be required in *exits* as defined in
3089 Chapter 2.
 - 3090 3. Visible alarm notification appliances shall not be required in elevator cars.
 - 3091 4. Visual alarm notification appliances are not required in critical care areas of
3092 Group I-2 Condition 2 occupancies that are in compliance with Section 907.2.6,
3093 Exception 2.
 - 3094 5. A visible *alarm notification appliance* installed in a nurses’ control station or
3095 other continuously attended staff location in a Group I-2, Condition 2 suite shall
3096 be an acceptable alternative to the installation of visible alarm notification
3097 appliances throughout the suite or unit in Group I-2, Condition 2 occupancies
3098 that are in compliance with Section 907.2.6, Exception 2.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3099 [F] 907.5.2.3.1 **Public use areas and common use areas.** Visible alarm notification
3100 appliances shall be provided in *public use areas* and *common use areas*.

3101
3102 **Exception:** Where employee work areas have audible alarm coverage, the
3103 notification appliance circuits serving the employee work areas shall be initially
3104 designed with not less than 20-percent spare capacity to account for the potential
3105 of adding visible notification appliances in the future to accommodate hearing-
3106 impaired employee(s).

3107
3108 [F] 907.5.2.3.2 **Groups I-1 and R-1.** Habitable spaces in *dwelling units* or *sleeping*
3109 *units* in Group I-1 and R-1 occupancies in accordance with Table 907.5.2.3.2 shall be
3110 provided with visible alarm notification. Visible alarms shall be activated by the in-
3111 room smoke alarm and the building fire alarm system.

3112
3113 [F] 907.5.2.3.3 **Group R-2.** In Group R-2 occupancies required by Section 907 to have
3114 a fire alarm system, each *story* that contains *dwelling units* and *sleeping units* shall be
3115 provided with the capability to support visible alarm notification appliances in
3116 accordance with Chapter 11 of ICC A117.1. Such capability shall accommodate wired
3117 or wireless equipment.

3118 [F] 907.5.2.3.2.1 **Wired equipment.** Where wired equipment is used to comply
3119 with the future capability required by Section 907.5.2.3.3, the system shall include one
3120 of the following capabilities:

- 3121
- 3122 1. The replacement of audible appliances with combination audible/visible
3123 appliances or additional visible notification appliances.
 - 3124 2. The future extension of the existing wiring from the unit smoke alarm locations
3125 to required locations for visible appliances.
 - 3126 3. For wired equipment, the fire alarm power supply and circuits shall have not
3127 less than 5-percent excess capacity to accommodate the future addition of
3128 visible alarm notification appliances, and a single access point to such circuits
3129 shall be available on every story. Such circuits shall not be required to be
3130 extended beyond a single access point on a story. The fire alarm system shop
3131 drawings required by Section 907.1.2 shall include the power supply and circuit
3132 documentation to accommodate the future addition of visible notification
3133 appliances.

3134
3135 **907.5.2.3.4 Notification alarm continuation.** Fire alarm systems shall be programmed
3136 non-silence-able for all extinguishing and suppression systems. Visible notification
3137 appliances shall continue to operate until the fire alarm system has been cleared and
3138 reset.”
3139

3140 **Carryover DFC Amendment**

3141 **76. Paragraph [F] 907.6.1, “Wiring,” of Subsection [F] 907.6, “Installation and**
3142
3143 **Monitoring,” of Section 907, “Fire Alarm and Detection Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3144 **Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended by to read as**
3145 **follows:**

3146 “[F] **907.6.1 Wiring.** Wiring shall comply with the requirements of NFPA 70 and NFPA 72.
3147 Wireless protection systems utilizing radio-frequency transmitting devices shall comply with
3148 the special requirements for supervision of low-power wireless systems in NFPA 72.

3149 **907.6.1.1 Installation.** All fire alarm systems must be installed in such a manner that the
3150 failure of any single alarm initiating device or a single open in an initiating circuit
3151 conductor will not interfere with the normal operation of other such devices. All initiating
3152 circuit conductors must be Class “A” or Class “X” wired with a minimum of 6 feet of
3153 horizontal and vertical separation between supply and return circuit conductors. All fire
3154 alarm systems must be wired as follows: IDC – Class A style or Class “X” style – D; SLC
3155 – Class A or Class “X” style 6; NAC Class B.
3156

3157 **Exception:** The IDC from an addressable device used to monitor the status of a
3158 suppression system and duct detectors may be wired Class B, Style B provided the
3159 addressable device is located within 10 feet of the suppression system device.
3160

3161 **907.6.1.2 Support.** Fire alarm system wiring and cables shall be independently
3162 supported using guide wires and anchors that are attached to the building structure.
3163

3164 **Exception:** Independent support wires may be attached to the ceiling grid for
3165 stabilization only.
3166

3167 **907.6.1.3 Identification.** All fire alarm system guide wire shall be painted
3168 red or labeled “Fire Alarm Only.” All fire alarm wiring junction boxes shall
3169 be labeled “Fire Alarm Use.” All fire alarm circuits shall be identified at terminal and
3170 junction boxes.
3171

3172 **907.6.1.4 Inspection.** All fire alarm system wiring installations shall be inspected by
3173 the fire code official for compliance with the requirements of this code, NFPA 70 and
3174 NFPA 72.
3175

3176 **907.6.1.5 Surge protection.** In addition to any built-in surge protection of the fire alarm
3177 panel, each fire alarm panel and power supply panel shall have an added surge
3178 protector installed. The secondary surge protection device must be installed in a manner
3179 that it is isolated a minimum of two feet from the panel as measured along the route of
3180 electrical travel. If data lines run between separate buildings, data line surge/spike
3181 protection is required on each data line where the line enters and/or exits each
3182 building.”
3183

3184 **Carryover DFC Amendment**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3185 77. **Paragraph [F] 907.6.3, “Initiating Device Identification,” of Subsection [F]**
3186 **907.6, “Installation and Monitoring,” of Section 907, “Fire Alarm and Detection Systems,”**
3187 **of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended**
3188 **to read as follows:**

3189 **"907.6.3 Initiating device identification.** All new or replacement [S~~The~~SS] fire alarm
3190 systems shall identify the specific initiating device address, location, device type, floor
3191 level where applicable and status including indication of normal, alarm, trouble and
3192 supervisory status, as appropriate. Alarms shall not be permitted to be transmitted as a general
3193 alarm or zone condition.
3194

3195 **Exceptions:**

- 3196 1. Fire alarm systems in single-story buildings less than 22,500 square feet (2090 m²)
3197 in area where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed
3198 in accordance with Section 903.3.3.1.1.
3199 2. Fire alarm systems that only include [~~manual fire alarm boxes, waterflow initiating~~
3200 ~~devices and]~~ not more than 10 additional alarm-initiating devices.
3201 3. ~~Special initiating devices that do not support individual device identification.~~
3202 4. ~~Fire alarm systems or devices that are replacing existing equipment.~~
3203

3204 **[F] 907.6.3.1 Annunciation.** The initiating device status shall be annunciated at an
3205 approved on-site location.
3206

3207 **Carryover DFC Amendment**

3208 78. **Paragraph [F] 907.6.6, “Monitoring,” of Subsection [F] 907.6, “Installation**
3209 **and Monitoring,” of Section 907, “Fire Alarm and Detection Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire**
3210 **Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

3211 **“[F] 907.6.6 Monitoring.** Fire alarm systems required by this chapter, by other chapters of
3212 this code, or by the *Dallas [International] Fire Code* shall transmit device identification in
3213 accordance with Section 907.6.3 to [be monitored by] an *approved* central station, remote
3214 supervising station, or *proprietary supervising station as defined* in [accordance with] NFPA
3215 72, or a local alarm which gives audible and visual signals at a constantly attended location. A
3216 constantly attended location is defined as being occupied by 2 or more persons whose
3217 responsibility it is to monitor the fire alarm system.
3218

3219 **Exception:** Monitoring by a supervising station is not required for:

- 3220
- 3221 1. Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms required by Section 907.2.11.
 - 3222 2. Smoke detectors in Group I-3 occupancies.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3223

3. *Automatic sprinkler systems* in one- and two-family dwellings.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3224 [F] 907.6.6.1 **Transmission of alarm signals.** Termination of alarm signals to a
3225 supervising station shall be in accordance with NFPA 72.

3226
3227 [F] 907.6.6.2 **MIY Monitoring.** Direct transmission of alarms associated with monitor
3228 it yourself (MIY) transmitters to a public safety answering point (PSAP) shall not be
3229 permitted unless *approved by the fire code official.*

3230
3231 [F] 907.6.6.3 **Termination of monitoring service.** Termination of fire alarm monitoring
3232 services shall be in accordance with Section 901.9 of the *Dallas [International] Fire Code.*

3233
3234 **907.6.6.4 Communication requirements.** All alarm systems, new or replacement, shall
3235 transmit alarm, supervisory and trouble signals descriptively to the approved central
3236 station, remote supervisory station or proprietary supervising station as defined in NFPA
3237 72, with the correct device designation and location of addressable device identification.
3238 Alarms shall not be permitted to be transmitted as a general alarm or zone condition."
3239

3240 Carryover DFC Amendment

3241 79. Subsection [F] 907.7, "Acceptance Tests and Completion," of Section 907,
3242 "Fire Alarm and Detection Systems," of Chapter 9, "Fire Protection Systems," of the 2021

3243 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:

3244 "[F] 907.7 **Acceptance tests and completion.** Upon completion of the installation, the fire alarm
3245 system and all fire alarm components shall be tested and approved in accordance with NFPA 72
3246 and Section 901.5 of the *Dallas Fire Code.*

3247
3248 [F] 907.7.1 **Single- and multiple-station alarm devices.** When the installation of the alarm
3249 devices is complete, each device and interconnecting wiring for multiple-station alarm devices
3250 shall be tested in accordance with the smoke alarm provisions of NFPA 72.

3251
3252 [F] 907.7.2 **Record of completion.** A record of completion in accordance with NFPA 72
3253 verifying that the system has been installed and tested in accordance with the *approved* plans
3254 and specifications shall be provided.

3255
3256 [F] 907.7.3 **Instructions.** Operating, testing and maintenance instructions and record drawings
3257 ("as-builts") and equipment specifications shall be provided at an *approved* location."

3258 Carryover DFC Amendment

3259 80. Subsection [F] 910.2, "Where Required," of Section 910, "Smoke and Heat
3260 Removal," of Chapter 9, "Fire Protection Systems," of the 2021 International Building Code
3261 is amended to read as follows:
3262

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3263 “[F] 910.2 Where required. Smoke and heat vents or a mechanical smoke removal system shall
3264 be installed as required by Sections 910.2.1 through 910.2.3 [~~and 910.2.2~~].
3265

3266 Exceptions:

- 3267
- 3268 1. Frozen food warehouses used solely for storage of Class I and II commodities where
3269 protected by an *approved automatic sprinkler system*.
 - 3270 2. Only manual s[S]moke and heat removal shall [not] be required in areas of buildings
3271 equipped with early suppression fast-response (ESFR) sprinklers. Automatic smoke
3272 and heat removal is prohibited.
 - 3273 3. Only manual s[S]moke and heat removal shall [not] be required in areas of buildings
3274 equipped with control mode special application sprinklers with a response time index
3275 of $50(m*S)^{1/2}$ or less that are listed to control a fire in stored commodities with 12 or
3276 fewer sprinklers. Automatic smoke and heat removal is prohibited.

3277 **910.2.1 Group F-1 or S-1.** Smoke and heat vents installed in accordance with Section 910.3
3278 or a mechanical smoke removal system installed in accordance with Section 910.4 shall be
3279 installed in buildings and portions thereof used as a Group F-1 or S-1 occupancy having more
3280 than 50,000 square feet (4645 m²) of undivided area. In occupied portions of a building
3281 equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1
3282 where the upper surface of the story is not a roof assembly, a mechanical smoke removal
3283 system in accordance with Section 910.4 shall be installed.
3284

3285 **Exception:** Group S-1 aircraft repair hangars.
3286

3287 **[F] 910.2.2 High-piled combustible storage.** Smoke and heat removal required by Table
3288 3206.2 of the *Dallas* [~~International~~] *Fire Code* for buildings and portions thereof containing
3289 high-piled combustible storage shall be installed in accordance with Section 910.3 in
3290 un-sprinklered buildings. In buildings and portions thereof containing high-piled combustible
3291 storage equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section
3292 903.3.1.1, a smoke and heat removal system shall be installed in accordance with Section 910.3
3293 or 910.4. In occupied portions of a building equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler*
3294 *system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, where the upper surface of the story is not a roof
3295 assembly, a mechanical smoke removal system in accordance with Section 910.4 shall be
3296 installed.
3297

3298 **910.2.3 Group H.** Smoke and heat vents or a mechanical smoke removal system shall be
3299 installed in buildings and portions thereof used as a Group H occupancy as follows:
3300

- 3301 1. In occupancies classified as Group H-2 or H-3, any of which are more than 15,000
3302 square feet (1394 m²) in single floor area.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3303 Exception: Buildings of noncombustible construction containing only noncombustible
3304 materials.

3306 2. In areas of buildings in Group H used for storing Class 2, 3 and 4 liquid and solid
3307 oxidizers, Class 1 and unclassified detonable organic peroxides, Class 3 and 4 unstable
3308 (reactive) materials, or Class 2 or 3 water-reactive materials as required for a high-
3309 hazard commodity classification.

3311 Exception: Buildings of noncombustible construction containing only noncombustible
3312 materials.”

3314 Carryover DFC Amendment

3315 81. Subsection 910.3, “Smoke and Heat Vents,” of Section 910 “Smoke and Heat

3316 Removal,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Fire Code is

3317 amended by adding a new Paragraph 910.3.4, “Vent Operation,” to read as follows:

3318
3319 “[F] 910.3.4 Vent operation. Smoke and heat vents shall be capable of being operated by
3320 *approved* automatic and manual means. Automatic operation of smoke and heat vents shall
3321 conform to the provisions of Sections 910.2.1 through 910.2.3.

3322
3323 [F] 910.3.4.1 Sprinklered buildings. Where installed in buildings equipped with an
3324 approved automatic sprinkler system, smoke and heat vents shall be designed to operate
3325 automatically.

3326
3327 The automatic operating mechanism of the smoke and heat vents shall operate at a
3328 temperature rating at least 100°F (approximately 38°C) greater than the temperature rating
3329 of the sprinklers installed.

3330
3331 Exception: Manual only system per Section 910.2.

3332
3333 [F] 910.3.4.2 Nonsprinklered buildings. Where installed in buildings not equipped with
3334 an approved automatic sprinkler system, smoke and heat vents shall operate automatically
3335 by actuation of a heat-responsive device rated at between 100°F (38°C) and 220°F (104°C)
3336 above ambient.

3337
3338 Exception: Listed gravity-operated drop out vents.”

3339
3340 [F] 910.3.5 Fusible link temperature rating. Where vents are installed in areas provided
3341 with automatic fire sprinklers and the vents operate by fusible link, the fusible link shall
3342 have a temperature rating of 360°F (182°C)

3343 Carryover DFC Amendment

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3345 **82. Subsection [F]910.4, “Mechanical Smoke Removal Systems,” of Section 910,**
3346 **“Smoke and Heat Removal,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021**
3347 **International Fire Code is amended to read as follows:**

3348 **“[F] 910.4 Mechanical smoke removal systems.** Mechanical smoke removal systems shall be
3349 designed and installed in accordance with Sections 910.4.1 through 910.4.7.

3350
3351 **910.4.1 Automatic sprinklers required.** The building shall be equipped throughout with an
3352 *approved automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

3353
3354 **910.4.2 Exhaust fan construction.** Exhaust fans that are part of a mechanical smoke removal
3355 system shall be rated for operation at 221°F (105°C). Exhaust fan motors shall be located
3356 outside of the exhaust fan air stream.

3357
3358 **910.4.3 System design criteria.** The mechanical smoke removal system shall be sized to
3359 exhaust the building at a minimum rate of two air changes per hour based upon the volume of
3360 the building or portion thereof without contents. The capacity of each exhaust fan shall not
3361 exceed 30,000 cubic feet per minute (14.2 m³/sec).

3362
3363 **910.4.3.1 Makeup air.** Makeup air openings shall be provided within 6 feet (1829 mm)
3364 of the floor level. Operation of makeup air openings shall be [~~manual or~~] automatic. The
3365 minimum gross area of makeup air inlets shall be 8 square feet per 1,000 cubic feet per
3366 minute (0.74 m² per 0.4719 m³/s) of smoke exhaust.

3367
3368 **910.4.4 Activation.** The mechanical smoke removal system shall be activated automatically
3369 by the automatic sprinkler system or by an approved fire detection system. Individual manual
3370 controls shall also be provided [~~only~~].

3371
3372 **Exception:** Manual only systems per Section 910.2.”
3373

3374 **Carryover DFC Amendment**

3375 **83. Subsection [F]912.2, “Location,” of Section 912, “Fire Department**
3376 **Connections,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building**
3377 **Code is amended to read as follows:**

3378 **“[F]912.2 Location.** With respect to hydrants, driveways, buildings and landscaping, fire
3379 department connections shall be so located that fire apparatus and hose connected to supply the
3380 system will not obstruct access to the buildings for other fire apparatus. Fire apparatus access
3381 roads shall be required within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of any fire department hose connections. A
3382 [~~The location of~~] fire department hose connection[s] shall be located within 400 feet (122 m) of
3383 a fire hydrant and approved by the fire code official.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3384 [F] **912.2.1 Visible location.** Fire department connections shall be located on the street side
3385 of buildings, fully visible and recognizable from the street or nearest point of fire department
3386 vehicle access or as otherwise *approved* by the *fire code official*.

3387
3388 [F] **912.2.2 Existing buildings.** On existing buildings, wherever the fire department
3389 connection is not visible to approaching fire apparatus, the fire department connection shall be
3390 indicated by an *approved* sign mounted on the street front or on the side of the building. Such
3391 sign shall have the letters “FDC” not less than 6 inches (152 mm) high and words in letters not
3392 less than 2 inches (51 mm) high or an arrow to indicate the location. Such signs shall be subject
3393 to the approval of the *fire code official*.

3394
3395 **912.2.3 Remote and free-standing fire department connections.** Free-standing fire
3396 department connections shall be internally and externally galvanized, permanently marked
3397 with the address being served, or portion thereof, and provided with approved locking
3398 caps/covers. Means to service the drain/check valve shall be provided.”
3399

3400 Carryover COG/DFC Amendment

3401 **84. Subsection [F] 913.1, “General,” of Section 913, “Fire Pumps,” of Chapter 9,**
3402 **“Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as**
3403 **follows:**

3404 [F] **913.1 General.** Where provided, fire pumps shall be installed in accordance with this section
3405 and NFPA 20. When located on the ground level at an exterior wall, the fire pump room shall be
3406 provided with an exterior fire department access door that is not less than 3 feet in width and 6 feet
3407 – 8 inches in height, regardless of any interior doors that are provided. A key box shall be provided
3408 at this door, as required by Section 506.1 of the *Dallas Fire Code*.
3409

3410 **Exception:** When it is necessary to locate the fire pump room on other levels or not at an
3411 exterior wall, the corridor leading to the fire pump room access from the exterior of the building
3412 shall be provided with equivalent fire resistance as that required for the pump room, or as
3413 approved by the *fire code official*. Access keys shall be provided in the key box as required by
3414 Section 506.1 of the *Dallas Fire Code*.
3415

3416 Carryover DFC Amendment

3417 **85. Subsection [F] 913.4, “Valve Supervision,” of Section 913, “Fire Pumps,” of**
3418 **Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended**
3419 **to read as follows:**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3420 “[F] 913.4 Valve supervision. Where provided, the fire pump suction, discharge and bypass
3421 valves, and isolation valves on the backflow prevention device or assembly shall be supervised
3422 open by one of the following methods:

- 3423
- 3424 1. Central-station, proprietary or remote-station signaling service.
 - 3425
 - 3426 2. Local signaling service that will cause the sounding of an audible signal at a *constantly*
3427 *attended location*.
 - 3428
 - 3429 3. Locking valves open when approved by the fire code official.
 - 3430
 - 3431 4. Sealing of valves and *approved* weekly recorded inspection where valves are located within
3432 fenced enclosures under the control of the owner when approved by the fire code official.
 - 3433

3434 [F] 913.4.1 Test outlet valve supervision. Fire pump test outlet valves shall be supervised in
3435 the closed position.”

3436

3437 **Carryover DFC Amendment**

3438 86. Section 913, “Fire Pumps,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the
3439

3440 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new Subsection [F] 913.6, “Pump
3441 Supervision,” to read as follows:

3442 “[F] 913.6 Pump supervision. Where the pump room is not constantly attended, the fire pump
3443 shall transmit a supervisory signal to indicate loss of power, phase reversal and pump running
3444 conditions in accordance with NFPA 20.”

3445

3446 3450 CHAPTER 10
3447 3451 MEANS OF EGRESS

3448 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

3449

3452 87. Subsection 1001.1, “General,” of Section 1001, “Administration,” of Chapter

3453 10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as
3454 follows:

3455 “1001.1 General. Buildings or portions thereof shall be provided with a *means of egress* system
3456 as required by this chapter. The provisions of this chapter shall control the design, construction
3457 and arrangement of *means of egress* components required to provide an *approved means of egress*
3458 from structures and portions thereof. Provisions of this code shall govern in the event of conflicts
3459 between this chapter and the corresponding chapter of the Dallas Fire Code.”

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3460 Carryover Dallas Amendment

3461 **88. Paragraph 1004.5, “Areas Without Fixed Seating, of Section 1004, “Occupant**
3462 **Load,” of Chapter 10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is**
3463 **amended to read as follows:**

3464 **“1004.5 Areas without fixed seating.** The number of occupants shall be computed at the rate
3465 of one occupant per unit of area as prescribed in Table 1004.5 For areas without *fixed seating*,
3466 the occupant load shall be not less than that number determined by dividing the floor area under
3467 consideration by the *occupant load* factor assigned to the function of the space as set forth in
3468 Table 1004.5 Where an intended function is not listed in Table 1004.5, the *building official*
3469 shall establish a function based on a listed function that most nearly resembles the intended
3470 function.

3471
3472 **Exception:** Where *approved by the building official*, the actual number of occupants for
3473 *whom each occupied space, floor or building is designed, although less than those*
3474 *determined by calculation, shall be permitted to be used in the determination of the design*
3475 *occupant load.”*
3476

3477 Carryover Dallas Amendment

3478 **89. Subsection 1004.7, “Outdoor Areas,” of Section 1004, “Occupant Load,” of**
3479 **Chapter 10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read**
3480 **as follows:**

3481 **“1004.7 Outdoor areas.** *Yards, patios, courts* and similar outdoor areas accessible to and usable
3482 by the building occupants shall be provided with *means of egress* as required by this chapter. The
3483 *occupant load* of such outdoor areas shall be assigned by the *building official* in accordance with
3484 the anticipated use. Where outdoor areas are to be used by persons in addition to the occupants of
3485 the building, and the path of egress travel from the outdoor areas passes through the building,
3486 *means of egress* requirements for the building shall be based on the sum of the *occupant loads* of
3487 the building plus the outdoor areas.

3488
3489 **Exceptions:**

- 3490
- 3491 1. Outdoor areas used exclusively for service of the building need only have one *means*
3492 *of egress*.
 - 3493 2. The occupant load of the outdoor area need not be added to the building’s total occupant
3494 load if:

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3495 2.1 The [Both] outdoor areas are located at grade and associated with Group R-3 and
3496 individual dwelling units of Group R-2. Means of egress must be provided from
3497 the outdoor area in accordance with this chapter.
3498

3499 2.2 The outdoor areas are not located at grade and associated with Group R-3 and
3500 individual dwelling units of Group R-2 and the outdoor area occupies not more than
3501 10 percent of the area of the dwelling unit of a nonsprinklered building or not less
3502 more than 20 percent of the area of the dwelling unit of a building provided
3503 throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system. Means of egress must be
3504 provided from the outdoor area in accordance with this chapter.”
3505

New COG Amendment

3506 **90. Subsection 1006.2.1, “Egress Based on Occupant Load and Common Path of**
3507 **Egress Travel Distance,” of section 1006 “Number of Exits and Exit Access Doorways,” of**
3508 **Chapter 10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read**
3509 **as follows:**
3510

3511 **“1006.2 Egress from spaces.** Rooms, areas or spaces including *mezzanines*, within a *story*
3512 *or basement* shall be provided with the number of *exits* or access *to exits* in accordance with this
3513 section.
3514

3515 **1006.2.1 Egress based on occupant load and common path of egress travel distance.** Two
3516 *exits* or *exit access* doorways from any space shall be provided where the design *occupant load* or
3517 the *common path of egress travel* distance exceeds the values listed in Table 1006.2.1. The
3518 cumulative *occupant load* from adjacent rooms, areas or spaces shall be determined in accordance
3519 with Section 1004.2.

Exceptions:

- 3520
- 3521 1. The number of *exits* from foyers, lobbies, vestibules, or similar spaces need not be based
3522 on cumulative *occupant loads* for areas discharging through such spaces, but the capacity
3523 of the *exits* from such spaces shall be based on applicable cumulative *occupant loads*.
 - 3524 2. *Care suites* in Group I-2 occupancies complying with Section 407.4.
 - 3525 3. Unoccupied rooftop mechanical rooms and penthouses are not required to comply with the
3526 common path of egress travel distance measurement.
- 3527

Carryover Dallas Amendment

3528 **91. Table 1006.2.1, “Spaces With One Exit or Exit Access Doorway,” of Subsection**
3529 **1006.2.1, “Egress Based on Occupant Load and Common Path of Egress Travel Distance,”**
3530 **of Section 1006, “Number of Exits and Exit Access Doorways,” of Chapter 10, “Means of**
3531 **Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**
3532

3533
3534 **“TABLE 1006.2.1**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3535
3536

SPACES WITH ONE EXIT OR EXIT ACCESS DOORWAY

OCCUPANCY	MAXIMUM OCCUPANT LOAD OF SPACE	MAXIMUM COMMON PATH OF EGRESS TRAVEL DISTANCE (feet) ^h		
		Without Sprinkler System (feet)		With Sprinkler System (feet)
		Occupant Load		
		OL ≤ 30	OL > 30	
A ^c , E, M	49	75	75	75 ^a
B	49	100	75	100 ^a
F	49	75	75	100 ^a
H-1, H-2, H-3	3	NP	NP	25 ^b
H-4, H-5	10	NP	NP	75 ^b
I-1, I-2 ^d , I-4	10	NP	NP	75 ^a
I-3	10	NP	NP	100 ^a
R-1	10	NP	NP	75 ^a
R-2	20	NP	NP	125 ^a
R-3 ^e	20	NP	NP	125 ^{a, g}
R-4 ^e	20	NP	NP	125 ^{a, g}
S ^f	29	100	75	100 ^a
U	49	100	75	75 ^a

3537
3538
3539
3540
3541
3542
3543
3544
3545
3546
3547
3548
3549
3550

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

NP = Not Permitted

- a. Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2. See Section 903 for occupancies where automatic sprinkler systems are permitted in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2.
- b. Group H occupancies equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.5.
- c. For a room or space used for assembly purposes having fixed seating, see Section 1030.8.
- d. For the travel distance limitations in Group I-2, see Section 407.4.
- e. The common path of egress travel distance in a Group R-3 occupancy located in a mixed occupancy building.
- f. The length of common path of egress travel distance in a Group S-2 open parking garage shall be not more than 100 feet.
- g. For the travel distance limitations in Groups R-3 and R-4 equipped throughout with a automatic sprinkler

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3551

system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3, see Section 1006.2.2.6.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3552 h. Not applicable to Single-family and Duplex uses as defined in the *Dallas Development Code* or to *Townhome*
3553 *and Multiple Building Townhouse structures.*
3554

3555 Carryover Dallas Amendment

3556 **92. Paragraph 1006.2.2, “Egress Based on Use,” of Subsection 1006.2, “Egress**
3557 **from Spaces,” of Section 1006, “Number of Exits and Exit Access Doorways,” of Chapter 10,**
3558 **“Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

3559 **1006.2.2 Egress based on use.** The numbers of *exits* or access to *exits* shall be provided in the
3560 uses described in Sections 1006.2.2.1 through 1006.2.2.6.

3561
3562 **1006.2.2.1 Boiler, incinerator and furnace rooms.** Two *exit access doorways* are
3563 required in boiler, incinerator and furnace rooms where the area is over 500 square feet (46
3564 m²) and any fuel-fired equipment exceeds 400,000 British thermal units (Btu) (422 000
3565 KJ) input capacity. Where two *exit access doorways* are required, one is permitted to be a
3566 fixed ladder or an *alternating tread device*. *Exit access doorways* shall be separated by a
3567 horizontal distance equal to one-half the length of the maximum overall diagonal
3568 dimension of the room.

3569
3570 **1006.2.2.2 Refrigeration machinery rooms.** Machinery rooms larger than 1,000 square
3571 feet (93 m²) shall have not less than two *exits* or *exit access doorways*. Where two *exit*
3572 *access doorways* are required, one such doorway is permitted to be served by a fixed ladder
3573 or an *alternating tread device*. *Exit access doorways* shall be separated by a horizontal
3574 distance equal to one-half the maximum horizontal dimension of the room.

3575
3576 All portions of machinery rooms shall be within 150 feet (45 720 mm) of an *exit* or *exit*
3577 *access doorway*. An increase in exit access travel distance is permitted in accordance with
3578 Section 1017.1.

3579
3580 *Exit* and *exit access doorways* shall swing in the direction of egress travel, regardless
3581 of the *occupant load* served. *Exit* and *exit access doorways* shall be tight fitting and *self-*
3582 *closing*.

3583
3584 **1006.2.2.3 Refrigerated rooms or spaces.** Rooms or spaces having a floor area larger
3585 than 1,000 square feet (93 m²), containing a refrigerant evaporator and maintained at a
3586 temperature below 68°F (20°C), shall have access to not less than two *exits* or *exit access*
3587 *doorways*.

3588
3589 *Exit access* travel distance shall be determined as specified in Section 1017.1, but all
3590 portions of a refrigerated room or space shall be within 150 feet (45 720 mm) of an *exit* or
3591 *exit access doorway* where such rooms are not protected by an approved *automatic*
3592 *sprinkler system*. Egress is allowed through adjoining refrigerated rooms or spaces.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3593 **Exception:** Where using refrigerants in quantities limited to the amounts based on the
3594 volume set forth in the *Dallas [International] Mechanical Code*.
3595

3596 **1006.2.2.4 Electrical Rooms.** The location and number of exit or exit access doorways
3597 shall be provided for electrical rooms in accordance with Section 110.26 of NFPA 70 for
3598 electrical equipment rated 1,000 volts or less, and Section 110.33 of NFPA 70 for electrical
3599 equipment rated over 1,000 volts. Panic hardware shall be provided where required in
3600 accordance with Section 1010.2.9.2
3601

3602 **1006.2.2.5 Vehicular ramps.** Vehicular ramps shall not be considered as an exit access
3603 ramp unless pedestrian facilities are provided.
3604

3605 **1006.2.2.6 Groups R-3 and R-4.** Where Group R-3 occupancies are permitted by Section
3606 903.2.8 to be protected by an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with
3607 Section 903.3.1.3, the exit access travel distance for Group R-3 shall be not more than 125
3608 feet (38 00 mm). Where Group R-4 occupancies are permitted by Section 903.2.8 be
3609 protected by an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3,
3610 the *exit access* travel distance for Group R-4 shall be not more than 75 feet (22 860 mm).
3611

3612 **1006.2.2.7 Day care means of egress** Day care facilities, rooms or spaces where care is
3613 provided for more than 10 that are 2 ½ years of age or less shall have access to not less
3614 than two exits or exit access doorways. Rooms normally occupied by prekindergarten,
3615 kindergarten, or first grade students shall be located in accordance with Section 504 of this
3616 code.
3617

3618 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

3619 **93. Subsection 1007.1.1, “Two Exits or Exit Access Doorways,” of Subsection**

3620 **1007.1 “General,” of Section 1007, “Exit or Exit Access Doorway Configuration,” of**

3621 **Chapter 10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Fire Code is amended to read as**

3622 **follows:**

3623 **“1007.1.1 Two exits or exit access doorways.** Where two exits, exit access doorways, exit
3624 access stairways or ramps, or any combination thereof, are required from any portion of the
3625 exit access, they shall be placed a distance apart equal to not less than one-half of the length
3626 of the maximum overall diagonal dimension of the building or area to be served measured in
3627 a straight line between them. Interlocking or scissor stairways shall be counted as one exit
3628 stairway.

3629 **Exceptions:**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3630 1. Where interior exit stairways or ramps are interconnected by a 1-hour fire-
3631 resistance-rated corridor conforming to the requirements of Section 1020, the
3632 required exit separation shall be measured along the shortest direct line of travel
3633 within the corridor.

3634 2. Where a building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in
3635 accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, the separation distance shall be not
3636 less than one-third ($\frac{1}{3}$) of the length of the maximum overall diagonal dimension
3637 of the area served.

3638 3. Interlocking stairs are permitted to be counted as two exits if all of the following
3639 conditions are met:
3640

3641 3.1. The building is not a high-rise;
3642

3643 3.2. The distance between exit doors complies with Section 1007.1;
3644

3645 3.3. The building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in
3646 accordance with the Section 903.3.1.1.
3647

3648 3.4. Each stairway is separated from each other and from the remainder of the
3649 building by construction having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours with
3650 no openings or penetrations between the stairways other than those for standpipes
3651 and automatic sprinkler systems. The separation between the stairways is permitted
3652 to be constructed as a single wall; and
3653

3654 3.5. Each exit meets all of the requirements in Section 1023 including the smokeproof
3655 enclosure provisions of Section 909.20.
3656

3657 **1007.1.1.1 Measurement point.** The separation distance required in Section 1007.1.1 shall
3658 be measured in accordance with the following:

- 3659
- 3660 1. The separation distance to exit or exit access doorways shall be measured to any point
3661 along the width of the doorway.
 - 3662
 - 3663 2. The separation distance to exit access stairways shall be measured to the closest riser.
 - 3664
 - 3665 3. The separation distance to exit access ramps shall be measured to the start of the ramp
3666 run.”
 - 3667

3668 **Carryover Dallas Amendment***

3669 **94. Subsection 1007.1.3 “Remoteness of exit access stairways or ramps,” of Section**
3670 **1007, “Exit or Exit Access Doorway Configuration,” of Subchapter 10, “Means of Egress,”**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3671 of 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a **new** Subparagraph 1007.1.3.2,
3672 “Interlocking Stairs When Allowed as Separate Exits With Three or More Exits or Exit
3673 Access Doorways,” to read as follows:

3674
3675 **1007.1.3 Remoteness of exit access stairways or ramps.** Where two *exit access stairways* or
3676 ramps provide the required *means of egress* to exits at another story, the required separation
3677 distance shall be maintained for all portions of such *exit access stairways* or *ramps*.

3678
3679 **1007.1.3.1 Three or more exit access stairways or ramps.** Where more than two *exit access*
3680 *stairways* or *ramps* provide the required *means of egress*, not less than two shall be arranged in
3681 accordance with Section 1007.1.3.

3682
3683 **“1007.1.3.2 Interlocking stairs when allowed as separate exits with three or more exits or exit**
3684 **access doorways.** Where access to three or more *exits* is required, not less than two *exit* or *exit*
3685 *access doorways* shall be arranged in accordance with the provisions of Section 1007.1.1.
3686 Additional required *exit* or *exit access doorways* shall be arranged a reasonable distance apart so
3687 that if one becomes blocked, the others will be available. In addition, the interlocking stairs *exit*
3688 *doorways* terminating at the exit discharge shall be arranged a reasonable distance apart equivalent
3689 to the exit separation required in Section 1007.1.1 and the smokeproof enclosure requirements.”
3690

3691 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

3692 **95. Subsection 1009.1, “Accessible Means of Egress Required,” of Section 1009,**

3693 **“Accessible Means of Egress,” of Chapter 10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International**

3694 **Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

3695 **“1009.1 Accessible means of egress required.** *Accessible means of egress* shall comply with this
3696 section. *Accessible* spaces shall be provided with not less than one *accessible means of egress*.
3697 Where more than one *means of egress* are required by Section 1006.2 or 1006.3 from any
3698 *accessible* space, each *accessible* portion of the space shall be served by not less than two
3699 *accessible means of egress*.

3700
3701 **Exceptions:**

- 3702
- 3703 1. One *accessible means of egress* is required from an *accessible mezzanine* level in
3704 accordance with Section 1009.3, 1009.4 or 1009.5.
 - 3705
 - 3706 2. In assembly areas with ramped *aisles* or stepped *aisles*, one *accessible means of egress*
3707 is permitted where the *common path of egress travel* is *accessible* and meets the
3708 requirements in Section 1030.8.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3709 3. Accessible means of egress may satisfy this section if designed in accordance with
3710 Article 9102, “Architectural Barriers,” of *Vernon’s Texas Civil Statutes* and the “Texas
3711 Accessibility Standards of the Architectural Barriers Act,” adopted by the Texas
3712 Commission on Licensing and Regulation and built in accordance with a state certified
3713 plan, including any variances or waivers granted by the state.”
3714

3715 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

3716 **96. Subsection 1009.5, “Platform Lifts,” of Section 1009, “Accessible Means of**
3717 **Egress,” of Chapter 10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is**
3718 **amended to read as follows:**

3719 **“1009.5 Platform lifts.** Platform (wheelchair) lifts shall be permitted to serve as part of an
3720 *accessible means of egress* where allowed as part of a required *accessible route* in Section 1110.9
3721 except for Item 10. Standby power for the platform lift shall be provided in accordance with
3722 Chapter 27.

3723
3724 **1009.5.1 Openness.** Platform lifts on an *accessible means of egress* shall not be installed in a
3725 hoistway as defined in ASME A17.1.”
3726

3727 **97. Subsection 1010.1, “Doors,” of Section 1010, “Doors, Gates and Turnstiles,”**
3728 **of Chapter 10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to**
3729 **read as follows:**

3730 **“1010.1 General.** Doors in the *Means of egress* shall comply with the requirements of Sections
3731 1010.1.1 through 1010.3.4. Exterior *exit* doors shall also comply with the requirements of Section
3732 1022.2. Gates in the *means of egress* shall comply with the requirements of Section 1010.4 and
3733 1010.4.1. Turnstiles in *means of egress* shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1010.5
3734 through 1010.5.4.

3735
3736 Doors, gates and turnstiles provided for egress purposes in numbers greater than required by
3737 this code shall meet the requirements of this section.

3738
3739 Doors in the *Means of egress* shall be readily distinguishable from the adjacent construction
3740 and finishes such that the doors are easily recognizable as doors. Mirrors or similar reflecting
3741 materials shall not be used on *means of egress* doors. *Means of egress* doors shall not be concealed
3742 by curtains, drapes, decorations or similar materials.

3743
3744 Security and electronic locking devices affecting *means of egress* shall be subject to approval
3745 by the building official and subject to inspections by the fire code official.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3746 **1010.1.1 Size of doors.** The required capacity of each door opening shall be sufficient for the
3747 *occupant load* thereof and shall provide a minimum clear width of 32 inches (813 mm). The
3748 clear openings of doorways with swinging doors shall be measured between the face of the
3749 door and the stop, with the door open 90 degrees (1.57 rad). Where this section requires a
3750 minimum clear width of 32 inches (813 mm) and a door opening includes two door leaves
3751 without a mullion, one leaf shall provide a minimum clear opening with of 32 inches (813
3752 mm). In Group I-2, doors serving as *means of egress* doors where used for the movement of
3753 beds shall provide a minimum clear opening width of 41½ inches (1054 mm). The minimum
3754 clear opening height of doors shall be not less than 80 inches (2032 mm).
3755

3756 **Exceptions:**

- 3757 1. In Group R-2 and R-3 *dwelling* and *sleeping units* that are not required to be an
3758 Accessible unit, Type A unit or Type B unit, the minimum width shall not apply to
3759 door openings that are not part of the required *means of egress*.
3760
- 3761 2. In Group I-3, door openings to resident *sleeping units* that are not required to be an
3762 Accessible unit shall have a minimum clear width of not less than 28 inches (711
3763 mm).
3764
- 3765 3. Door openings to storage closets less than 10 square feet (0.93 m²) in area shall not
3766 be limited by the minimum clear opening width.
3767
- 3768 4. The maximum width of door leaves in revolving doors that comply with Section
3769 1010.3.1 shall not be limited.
3770
- 3771 5. The maximum width of door leaves in *power operated doors* that comply with
3772 Section 1010.3.2 shall not be limited.
3773
- 3774 6. Door openings within a *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* shall not have a minimum
3775 clear height of 78 inches (1981 mm).
3776
- 3777 7. In *dwelling units* and *sleeping units* that are not required to be Accessible, Type A
3778 or Type B units, exterior door openings other than the required *exit* door shall have
3779 a minimum clear opening height of 76 inches (1930 mm).
3780
- 3781 8. In Groups I-1, R-2, R-3 and R-4, in *dwelling* and *sleeping units* that are not required
3782 to be Accessible, Type A or Type B units, the minimum clear opening widths shall
3783 not apply to interior egress doors.
3784
- 3785 9. Door openings required to be *accessible* within Type B units shall have a minimum
3786 clear width of 31.75 inches (806 mm).
3787
- 3788 10. Doors to walk-in freezers and coolers less than 1,000 square feet (93 m²) in area
3789 shall have a maximum width of 60 inches (1524 mm) nominal.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3790 11. Doors serving nonaccessible single user shower or sauna compartments, toilet stalls
3791 or dressing, fitting or changing rooms shall have a minimum clear opening width
3792 of 20 inches (508 mm).
3793

3794 **1010.1.1.1 Projections into clear width.** There shall not be projections into the required
3795 clear opening width lower than 34 inches (864 mm) above the floor or ground. Projections
3796 into the clear opening width between 34 inches (864 mm) and 80 inches (2032 mm) above
3797 the floor or ground shall not exceed 4 inches (102 mm).
3798

3799 **Exception:** Door closers and door stops shall be permitted to be 78 inches (1980 mm)
3800 minimum above the floor.
3801

3802 **1010.1.2 Egress door types.** Egress doors shall be of the pivoted or side-hinged swinging
3803 type.
3804

3805 **Exceptions:**

- 3806
- 3807 1. Private garages, office areas, factory and storage areas with an *occupant load* of 10
3808 or less.
- 3809
- 3810 2. Group I-3 occupancies used as a place of detention.
- 3811
- 3812 3. Critical or intensive care patient rooms within suites of health care facilities.
- 3813
- 3814 4. Doors within or serving a single *dwelling unit* in Groups R-2 and R-3.
- 3815
- 3816 5. In other than Group H occupancies, revolving doors complying with Section
3817 1010.3.1.
- 3818
- 3819 6. In other than Group H occupancies, special purpose horizontal sliding, accordion
3820 or folding door assemblies complying with Section 1010.3.3.
- 3821
- 3822 7. Power-operated doors in accordance with Section 1010.3.2.
- 3823
- 3824 8. Doors serving a bathroom within an individual *sleeping unit* in Group R-1.
- 3825
- 3826 9. In other than Group H occupancies, manually operated horizontal sliding doors are
3827 permitted in a *means of egress* from spaces with an *occupant load* of 10 or less.
3828

3829 **1010.1.2.1 Direction of swing.** Side-hinged swinging doors, pivoted doors and balanced doors
3830 shall swing in the direction of egress travel where serving a room or area containing an
3831 *occupant load* of 50 or more persons or a Group H occupancy.
3832

3833 **1010.1.3 Forces to unlatch and open doors.** The forces to unlatch doors shall comply with
3834 the following:

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 3835 1. Where door hardware operates by push or pull, the operational force to unlatch the door
3836 shall not exceed 15 pounds (67 N)
3837 2. Where door hardware operates by rotation, the operational force to unlatch the door
3838 shall not exceed 28 inch-pounds (315 N-cm).

3839 The force to open doors shall comply with the following:
3840

- 3841 1. For interior swinging egress doors that are manually operated, other than doors required
3842 to be fire rated, the force for pushing or pulling open the door shall not exceed 5 pounds
3843 (22 N).
3844 2. For other swinging doors, sliding doors or folding doors, and doors required to be fire
3845 rated, the door shall require not more than a 30-pound (133 N) force to be set in motion
3846 and shall move to a full-open position when subjected to not more than a 15-pound (67
3847 N) force.
3848

3849 **1010.1.3.1 Location of applied forces.** Forces shall be applied to the latch side of the
3850 door.
3851

3852 **1010.1.3.2 Manual horizontal sliding doors.** Where a manual horizontal sliding door is
3853 required to latch, the latch or other mechanism shall prevent the door from rebounding into
3854 a partially open position when the door is closed.

3855 **1010.1.4 Floor elevation.** There shall be a floor or landing on each side of a door. Such floor
3856 or landing shall be at the same elevation on each side of the door. Landings shall be level
3857 except for exterior landings, which are permitted to have a slope not to exceed 0.25 unit vertical
3858 in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope).
3859

3860 **Exceptions:**

- 3861
3862 1. At doors serving individual *dwelling units* or *sleeping units* in Groups R-2 and R-3
3863 a door is permitted to open at the top step of an interior flight of stairs, provided
3864 that the door does not swing over the top step.
3865
3866 2. At exterior doors serving Group F, H, R-2 and S and where such doors are not part
3867 of an accessible route, the landing at an exterior door shall not be more than 7 inches
3868 (178 mm) below the landing on the egress side of the door, provided that the door,
3869 other than an exterior storm or screen door, does not swing over the landing.
3870
3871 3. At exterior doors serving Group U and individual *dwelling units* and *sleeping units*
3872 in Groups R-2 and R-3, and where such units are not required to be *Accessible units*,
3873 *Type A units* or *Type B units*, the landing at an exterior doorway shall be not more
3874 than 7¾ inches (197 mm) below the landing on the egress side of the door. Such
3875 doors, shall be permitted to swing over either landing.
3876
3877 4. Variations in elevation due to differences in finish materials, but not more than ½
3878 inch (12.7 mm).

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 3879 5. Exterior decks, patios or balconies that are part of *Type B dwelling units* or *sleeping*
3880 *units*, that have impervious surfaces and that are not more than 4 inches (102 mm)
3881 below the finished floor level of the adjacent interior space of the *dwelling unit* or
3882 *sleeping unit*.
3883
- 3884 6. Doors serving equipment spaces not required to be *accessible* in accordance with
3885 Section 1103.2.9 and serving an *occupant load* of five or less shall be permitted to
3886 have a landing on one side to be not more than 7 inches (178 mm) above or below
3887 the landing on the egress side of the door.
3888

3889 **1010.1.5 Landings at doors.** Landings shall have a width not less than the width of the
3890 *stairway* or the door, whichever is greater. Doors in the fully open position shall not reduce a
3891 required dimension by more than 7 inches (178 mm). When a landing serves an *occupant load*
3892 of 50 or more, doors in any position shall not reduce the landing to less than one-half its
3893 required width. Landings shall have a length measured in the direction of travel of not less
3894 than 44 inches (1118 mm).
3895

3896 **Exception:** Landing length in the direction of travel in Groups R-3 and U and within
3897 individual units of Group R-2 need not exceed 36 inches (914 mm).
3898

3899 **1010.1.6 Thresholds.** Thresholds at doorways shall not exceed $\frac{3}{4}$ inch (19.1 mm) in height
3900 above the finished floor or landing for sliding doors serving *dwelling units* or $\frac{1}{2}$ inch (12.7
3901 mm) above the finished floor or landing for other doors. Raised thresholds and floor level
3902 changes greater than $\frac{1}{4}$ inch (6.4 mm) at doorways shall be beveled with a slope not greater
3903 than one unit vertical in two units horizontal (50-percent slope).
3904

3905 **Exceptions:**

- 3906 1. In occupancy Group R-2 or R-3, threshold heights for sliding and side-hinged
3907 exterior doors shall be permitted to be up to $7\frac{3}{4}$ inches (197 mm) in height if all of
3908 the following apply:
3909
- 3910 1.1. The door is not part of the required *means of egress*.
3911
- 3912 1.2. The door is not part of an *accessible route* as required by Chapter 11.
3913
- 3914 1.3. The door is not part of and *Accessible unit*, *Type A unit* or *Type B unit*.
3915
- 3916 2. In *Type B units*, where Exception 5 to Section 1010.1.4 permits a 4-inch (102 mm)
3917 elevation change at the door, the threshold height on the exterior side of the door
3918 shall not exceed $4\frac{3}{4}$ inches (120 mm) in height above the exterior deck, patio or
3919 balcony for sliding doors or $4\frac{1}{2}$ inches (114 mm) above the exterior deck, patio or
3920 balcony for other doors.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3921 **1010.1.7 Door arrangement.** Space between two doors in a series shall be 48 inches (1219
3922 mm) minimum plus the width of a door swinging into the space. Doors in a series shall swing
3923 either in the same direction or away from the space between the doors.

3924

3925 **Exceptions:**

3926

3927 1. The minimum distance between horizontal sliding power-operated doors in a series
3928 shall be 48 inches (1219 mm).

3929

3930 2. Storm and screen doors serving individual *dwelling units* in Groups R-2 and R-3
3931 need not be spaced 48 inches (1219 mm) from the other door.

3932

3933 3. Doors within individual *dwelling units* in Groups R-2 and R-3 other than within
3934 *Type A dwelling units*.

3935

3936 **1010.2 Door operations.** Except as specifically permitted by this section egress doors shall
3937 be readily openable from the egress side without the use of a key or special knowledge or effort.

3938

3939 **1010.2.1 Unlatching.** The unlatching of any door or leaf for egress shall require not more
3940 than one motion in a single linear or rotational direction to release all latching and all
3941 locking devices.

3942

3943 **Exceptions:**

3944

1. Places of detention or restraint.

3945

2. Where manually operated bolt locks are permitted by Section 1010.2.5.

3946

3. Doors with automatic flush bolts as permitted by Section 1010.2.4, Item 4.

3947

3948 4. Doors from individual *dwelling units* and *sleeping units* of Group R
3949 occupancies as permitted by Section 1010.2.4, Item 5.

3950

3951

3952 **1010.2.2 Hardware.** Door handles, pulls, latches, locks and other operating devices on
3953 doors required to be *accessible* by Chapter 11 shall not require tight grasping, tight
3954 pinching or twisting of the wrist to operate.

3955

3956

3957 **1010.2.3 Hardware height.** Door handles, pulls, latches, locks and other operating devices
3958 shall be installed 34 inches (846 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1219 mm) maximum above
3959 the finished floor. Locks used only for security purposes and not used for normal operation
3960 are permitted at any height.

3961

3962 **Exception:** Access doors or gates in barrier walls and fences protecting pools, spas and
3963 hot tubs shall be permitted to have operable parts of the release of latch on self-latching
3964 devices at 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the finished floor or ground, provided

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3965 the self-latching devices are not also self-locking devices operated by means of a key,
3966 electronic opener or integral combination lock.

3967
3968 **1010.2.4 Locks and latches.** Locks and latches shall be permitted to prevent operation of
3969 doors where any of the following exists:

- 3970
- 3971 1. Places of detention or restraint.
 - 3972
 - 3973 2. In Group I-1, Condition 2 and Group I-2 occupancies where the clinical needs of
3974 persons receiving care require containment or where persons receiving care pose a
3975 security threat, provided that all clinical staff can readily unlock doors at all times,
3976 and all such locks are keyed to keys carried by all clinical staff at all times or all
3977 clinical staff have the codes or other means necessary to operate the locks at all
3978 times.
 - 3979
 - 3980 3. In buildings in occupancy Group A having an *occupant load* of 300 or less, Groups
3981 B, F, M and S, and in *places of religious worship*, the main exterior door or doors
3982 are permitted to be equipped with key-operated locking devices from the egress
3983 side provided:
 - 3984
 - 3985 3.1. The locking device is readily distinguishable as locked.
 - 3986
 - 3987 3.2. A readily visible durable sign is posted on the egress side or adjacent to
3988 the door stating: THIS DOOR TO REMAIN UNLOCKED WHEN THIS
3989 SPACE IS OCCUPIED. The sign shall be in letters 1 inch (25 mm) high on a
3990 contrasting background.
 - 3991
 - 3992 3.3. The use of the key-operated locking device is revocable by the *building*
3993 *official* for due cause.
 - 3994
 - 3995 4. Where egress doors are used in pairs, *approved* automatic flush bolts shall be
3996 permitted to be used, provided that the door leaf having the automatic flush bolts
3997 has no doorknob or surface-mounted hardware.
 - 3998
 - 3999 5. Doors from individual *dwelling* or *sleeping units* of Group R occupancies having
4000 an *occupant load* of 10 or less are permitted to be equipped with a night latch, dead
4001 bolt or security chain, provided such devices are openable from the inside without
4002 the use of a key or tool.
 - 4003
 - 4004 6. *Fire doors* after the minimum elevated temperature has disabled the unlatching
4005 mechanism in accordance with listed fire door test procedures
 - 4006
 - 4007
 - 4008 7. Doors serving roofs not intended to be occupied shall be permitted to be locked
4009 preventing entry to the building from the roof.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

4010 8. Other than egress *courts*, where occupants must egress from an exterior space
4011 through the building for *means of egress*, exit access doors shall be permitted to be
4012 equipped with an approved locking device where installed and operated in
4013 accordance with all the following:

4014
4015 8.1. The maximum *occupant load* shall be posted where required by section
4016 1004.9. Such signage shall be permanently affixed inside the building and shall
4017 be posted in a conspicuous space near all the exit access doorways.

4018
4019 8.2. A weatherproof telephone or two-way communication system installed in
4020 accordance with Sections 1009.8.1 and 1009.8.2 shall be located adjacent to not
4021 less than one required exit access door on the exterior side.

4022
4023 8.3. The egress door locking device is readily distinguishable as locked and
4024 shall be a key-operated locking device.

4025
4026 8.4. A clear window or glazed door opening, not less than 5 square feet (.46
4027 m²) in area, shall be provided at each exit access door to determine if there are
4028 occupants using the outdoor area.

4029
4030 8.5. A readily visible, durable sign shall be posted on the interior side on or
4031 adjacent to each locked required exit access door serving the exterior area
4032 stating, "THIS DOOR TO REMAIN UNLOCKED WHEN THE OUTDOOR
4033 AREA IS OCCUPIED." The letters on the sign shall be not less than 1 inch
4034 (25.4 mm) high on a contrasting background.

4035
4036 9. Locking devices are permitted on doors to balconies, decks, or other exterior spaces
4037 serving individual dwelling or sleeping units.

4038
4039 10. Locking devices are permitted on doors to balconies, decks or other exterior spaces
4040 of 250 square feet (23.23 m²) or less serving a private office space.

4041 Carryover COG Amendment

4042
4043 **1010.2.5 Bolt locks.** Manually operated flush bolts or surface bolts are not permitted.

4044 Exceptions:

- 4045
4046 1. On doors not required for egress in individual *dwelling units* or *sleeping units*.
4047
4048 2. Where a pair of doors serves a storage or equipment room, manually operated
4049 edge- or surface-mounted bolts are permitted on the inactive leaf.
4050
4051 3. Where a pair of doors serves an *occupant load* of less than 50 persons in a
4052 Group B, F or S occupancy, manually operated edge- or surface-mounted bolts

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

4053 are permitted on the inactive leaf. The inactive leaf shall not contain doorknobs,
4054 *panic* bars or similar operating hardware.

4055
4056 4. Where a pair of doors serves a Group A, B, F, M or S occupancy, manually
4057 operated edge- or surface-mounted bolts are permitted on the inactive leaf
4058 provided such inactive leaf is not needed to meet egress capacity requirements
4059 and the building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in
4060 accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. The inactive leaf shall not contain
4061 doorknobs, *panic* bars or similar operating hardware.

4062
4063 5. Where a pair of doors serves patient care rooms in Group I-2 occupancies, self-
4064 latching edge- or surface-mounted bolts are permitted on the inactive leaf
4065 provided that the inactive leaf is not needed to meet egress capacity
4066 requirements and the inactive leaf shall not contain doorknobs, *panic* bars or
4067 similar operating hardware.”

4068
4069 **1010.2.6 Closet doors.** Closet doors that latch in the closed position shall be openable
4070 from inside the closet.

4071
4072 **1010.2.7- Stairway doors.** Interior *stairway* means of egress doors shall be openable
4073 from both sides without the use of a key or special knowledge or effort.

4074
4075 **Exceptions:**

4076
4077 1. *Stairway* discharge doors shall be openable from the egress side and shall only
4078 be locked from the opposite side.

4079
4080 2. This section shall not apply to doors arranged in accordance with Section
4081 403.5.3.

4082
4083 3. *Stairway* exit doors are permitted to be locked from the side opposite the egress
4084 side, provided that they are openable from the egress side and capable of being
4085 unlocked simultaneously without unlatching upon a signal from the *fire*
4086 *command center*, if present, or a signal by emergency personnel from a single
4087 location inside the main entrance to the building.

4088
4089 4. *Stairway* exit doors shall be openable from the egress side and shall only be
4090 locked from the opposite side in Group B, F, M and S occupancies where the
4091 only interior access to the tenant space is from a single *exit stairway* where
4092 permitted in Section 1006.3.4.

4093
4094 5. *Stairway exit* doors shall be openable from the egress side and shall only be
4095 locked from the opposite side in Group R-2 occupancies where the only interior
4096 access to the *dwelling unit* is from a single *exit stairway* where permitted in
4097 Section 1006.3.4.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

4098 **1010.2.8 Locking arrangements in education occupancies.** In Group E occupancies,
4099 Group B educational occupancies and Group I-4 occupancies, egress doors from
4100 classrooms, offices and other occupied rooms shall be permitted to be provided with
4101 locking arrangements designed to keep intruders from entering the room shall comply with
4102 all of the following conditions are met:

- 4103 1. The door shall be capable of being unlocked from outside the room with a key or
4104 other *approved* means.
- 4105 2. The door shall be openable from within the room in accordance with Section
4106 1010.2.
- 4107 3. Modifications shall not be made to listed *panic hardware*, fire door hardware or
4108 door closers.
- 4109 4. Modifications to *fire door assemblies* shall be in accordance with NFPA 80.
4110

4111 Remote locking or unlocking of doors from an approved location shall be permitted in
4112 addition to the unlocking operation in item 1.
4113
4114

4115 **1010.2.9 Panic and fire exit hardware.** Swinging doors serving a Group H occupancy
4116 and doors serving rooms or spaces with an *occupant load* of 50 or more in a Group A or E
4117 occupancy shall not be provided with a latch or lock other than *panic hardware* or *fire exit*
4118 *hardware*.

4119
4120 **Exceptions:**

- 4121 1. A main exit of a Group A occupancy shall be permitted to be locking in accordance
4122 with Section 1010.2.4 Item 3.
4123
- 4124 2. Doors provided with *panic hardware* or *fire exit hardware* and serving a Group A
4125 or E occupancy shall be permitted to be electrically locked in accordance with
4126 Section 1010.2.11 or 1010.2.12.
4127
- 4128 3. Exit access doors serving occupied exterior areas shall be permitted to be locked in
4129 accordance with Section 1010.2.4, Item 8.
4130
- 4131 4. Courtrooms shall be permitted to be locked in accordance with Section 1010.2.13,
4132 Item 3.
4133

4134 **1010.2.9.1 Refrigeration machinery room.** Refrigeration machinery rooms larger
4135 than 1,000 square feet (93 m²) shall have not less than two exit or exit access doorways
4136 that swing in the direction of egress travel and shall be equipped with *panic hardware*
4137 *or fire exit hardware*.
4138

4139 **1010.2.9.2 Rooms with electrical equipment.** Exit or exit access doors serving
4140 transformer vaults, rooms designated for batteries or energy storage systems, or
4141 modular data centers shall be equipped with panic hardware or fire exit hardware.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

4142 Rooms containing electrical equipment rated 800 amperes or more that contain
4143 overcurrent devices, switching, devices or control devices and where the exit or exit
4144 access door is less than 25 feet (7620 mm) from the equipment working space as
4145 required by NFPA 70, such doors shall not be provided with a latch or lock other than
4146 *panic hardware* or *fire exit hardware*. The doors shall swing in the direction of egress
4147 travel.

4148
4149 **1010.2.9.3 Installation.** Where *panic* or *fire exit hardware* is installed, it shall comply
4150 with the following:

- 4151 1. *Panic hardware* shall be listed in accordance with UL 305.
- 4152 2. *Fire exit hardware* shall be listed in accordance with UL 10C and UL 305.
- 4153 3. The actuating portion of the releasing device shall extend not less than one-half
4154 of the door leaf width.
- 4155 4. The maximum unlatching force shall not exceed 15 pounds (67 N).

4156
4157 **1010.2.9.4 Balanced doors.** If *balanced doors* are used and *panic hardware* is
4158 required, the *panic hardware* shall be the push-pad type and the pad shall not extend
4159 more than one-half the width of the door measured from the latch side.”

4160
4161 **1010.2.10 Monitored or recorded egress.** Where electrical systems that monitor or record
4162 egress activity are incorporated, the locking system shall comply with Section 1010.2.11,
4163 1010.2.12, 1010.2.13, 1010.2.14 or 1010.2.15 or shall be readily openable from the egress
4164 side without the use of a key or special knowledge or effort.

4165
4166 ~~**1010.2.11 Door hardware release of electrically locked egress doors.** Door hardware~~
4167 ~~release of electric locking systems shall be permitted on doors in the means of egress in~~
4168 ~~any occupancy except Group H where installed and operated in accordance with all of the~~
4169 ~~following:~~

- 4170 1. ~~The door hardware that is affixed to the door leaf has an obvious method of operation~~
4171 ~~that is readily operated under all lighting conditions.~~
 - 4172 2. ~~The door hardware is capable of being operated with one hand and shall comply~~
4173 ~~with Section 1010.2.1.~~
 - 4174 3. ~~Operation of the door hardware directly interrupts the power to the electric lock and~~
4175 ~~unlocks the door immediately.~~
 - 4176 4. ~~Loss of power to the electric locking system automatically unlocks the door.~~
- 4177
4178
4179
4180
4181
4182
4183
4184

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

4185 ~~5. Where *panic or fire exit hardware* is required by Section 1010.2.9, operation of~~
4186 ~~*panic or fire exit hardware* also releases the electric lock.~~
4187

4188 ~~6. The locking system units shall be *listed* in accordance with UL 294.~~
4189

4190 **1010.2.11 Door hardware release of electrically locked egress doors.** Doors in all
4191 occupancies are permitted to be equipped with approved, listed electronic locks which must
4192 be installed in accordance with this section if the building is protected throughout with an
4193 *automatic sprinkler system*, a fire alarm system, a smoke detection system or with UL 268
4194 *smoke detectors installed on each interior side of all doors provided with electronic locks.*
4195 The locking system units shall be listed in accordance with UL 294.
4196

4197 **Exception:** Electronic strikes or electronic mortise locks that do not impede egress are
4198 not subject to these requirements.
4199

4200 **1010.2.11.1 Ability to exit.** Regardless of the location of the device or the level of
4201 security desired, the ability to exit at the option of the individual, not the controlling
4202 authority, must always be provided.
4203

Exceptions:

- 4204
4205
- 4206 1. Locations for occupants needing self-protection because of reduced mental
4207 capacities such as mental or Alzheimer care hospitals may have release
4208 mechanisms as further specified in Section 1010.2.11.4
4209
 - 4210 2. Locations where national security interests are present with approval of the
4211 building official.
4212
 - 4213 3. Modified arrangements may be made for nursery and obstetric areas,
4214 assisted living facilities and other similar facilities with approval of the
4215 building official.
4216

4217 (Note: For interior locations such as elevator lobbies, access includes
4218 passage into and through the tenant space being secured to provide access to the
4219 stairway. If access through the secured area is not desired, another exiting
4220 method such as providing a public corridor to the stairway should be utilized.)
4221

4222 **1010.2.11.2 General.** Electronic locking devices installed in such a manner that the
4223 method of unrestricted exiting relies upon electricity or electronics instead of
4224 mechanical means shall comply with the provisions set forth in this section. General
4225 guidelines for such installation are as follows:
4226

- 4227 1. Entrance doors in buildings with an occupancy in Group A, B, E or M shall not
4228 be secured from the egress side during periods that the building is open to the
4229 general public.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 4230 2. Access to exits, even in non-fire situations, shall be available to all individuals,
4231 even those individuals that are considered as unauthorized. Manually activated
4232 release mechanisms shall be made available. For specific provisions and
4233 exceptions, see Section 1010.2.11.4
4234
- 4235 3. For emergency situations, buildings shall be provided with an automatic release
4236 mechanism as specified in Section 1010.2.11.5.
4237
- 4238 4. Once released, the door shall swing freely as a push/pull door. For specific
4239 provisions and exceptions, see Section 1010.2.11.6.
4240
- 4241 5. Request to exit buttons, break glass boxes and emergency pull boxes, with their
4242 required signs, shall be installed in accordance with Sections 1010.11.2.4 and
4243 1010.11.2.7.
4244
- 4245 6. All devices used in a fire rated/fire door situation shall be approved for such
4246 use.
4247

4248 **1010.2.11.3 Permits and inspections.** A separate permit is required to install
4249 electronic security devices. Permits will be issued as SE permits and the fee will be
4250 based on the value of the work. Delayed egress locks meeting the criteria set forth in
4251 Section 1010.11.2.7 will not require separate permits. Electronic security devices shall
4252 be approved by the *building official* and shall be functionally tested by the fire marshal.
4253

4254 **1010.2.11.4 Access to exits/manual release mechanisms.** Passage through the
4255 secured door shall be provided.
4256

4257 (Note: Under usual circumstances, passage by individuals on the inside, going to
4258 the outside, is made available. Controls are usually installed to prevent unauthorized
4259 entry. Examples of such installations are the lobby entrance doors where exiting is by
4260 pushing the exit button.)
4261

4262 Normal passage shall be provided with the use of an approved button installed in
4263 accordance with Section 1010.11.2.7.
4264

4265 Other acceptable normal release methods for all other occupancies may include
4266 options as follows:
4267

- 4268 1. Pushing on or making contact with an approved electronic release bar. Such
4269 bars shall be installed such that they will fail in the released position should the
4270 electrical connection with the bar be lost.
4271
- 4272 2. Where panic or fire exit hardware is required by Section 1010.2.9, operation of
4273 the listed panic or fire exit hardware also releases the electromagnetic lock.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

4274 3. Use of an approved motion detector. Upon detection of an approach, the device
4275 will unlatch. When using a motion detector, a release button in accordance with
4276 Section 1010.11.2.7 is still required to be installed in case of failure or
4277 inaccurate detection of the motion device.
4278

4279 When access to the exits requires passage through the device, manual release
4280 mechanisms shall be made available.
4281

4282 (Note: Examples of such installations that shall provide a manual override
4283 method are as follows:
4284

4285 1. Elevator lobbies on full floor tenants. Access to the exit stairs is controlled
4286 and the exit path is through the device and tenant space. To permit access
4287 to the stairs, a manual override system shall be installed.
4288

4289 2. Warehouses/factories where employees are required to enter and exit
4290 through one point. Use of other building exits are undesired and controlled.
4291 A manual override system shall still be installed at the controlled exits.
4292

4293 3. Secured systems where employee ingress/egress is monitored at all secured
4294 doors. A manual override system shall still be installed at each door.
4295

4296 4. Occupancies like jewelry stores where the desire is to buzz entry and exit.
4297 Buzzing entry is acceptable. Buzzing exit may be used but a manual
4298 override system shall still be installed at the door.)
4299

4300 When passage of individuals is undesired, unless other approved exits are
4301 available, access at the option of the individual shall be provided. Acceptable
4302 release methods may include options as follows:
4303

4304 1. An emergency pull box or a break glass emergency box may be located
4305 adjacent to the door to activate the release in an emergency. Choice of box
4306 shall be approved by the fire chief so as not to be confused with any other
4307 alarm boxes. An approved sign shall be adjacent to the box with the
4308 appropriate message such as “Pull to Open Door” or “Break Glass to Open
4309 Door.”
4310

4311 2. When approved by the building official, a release button will not be required
4312 for buildings provided with an approved automatic sprinkler system
4313 throughout with monitored 24-hour security personnel on site, if a means
4314 for two-way communication with security such as intercom or telephone is
4315 provided in an approved location. Controls shall be provided at the security
4316 station for unlatching the electronic device. The two-way communication

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

4317 system shall be wired through a supervised circuit as defined in the *Dallas*
4318 *Fire Code.*
4319

4320 3. In I Occupancies provided with an approved automatic sprinkler system
4321 throughout, the release button will not be required provided a control for
4322 releasing the device is provided at a nurse station and a deactivation method,
4323 e.g. a keyed control, a control pad or card reader, is provided at the door and
4324 staff is supplied with the appropriate tool or knowledge to operate the
4325 release mechanism.
4326

4327 **1010.2.11.5 Automatic release mechanisms.** Electronic locking devices shall have
4328 automatic releasing that complies with the following:
4329

4330 1. Automatically release upon activation of the smoke detection or fire alarm
4331 system, if provided. The control devices shall remain unlocked until the system
4332 has been reset.
4333

4334 2. When the area of concern has a sprinkler system, automatically release upon
4335 activation of a waterflow alarm or trouble signal. The control devices shall
4336 remain unlocked until the system is reset.
4337

4338 3. Automatically release upon loss of electrical power to the building or to the
4339 electronic device. Locking mechanisms shall not be provided with emergency
4340 backup power such as generators or batteries.
4341

4342 4. Automatically release upon activation of a manual release mechanism as
4343 specified in Section 1010.11.2.4 and as further specified in Section 1010.11.2.7.
4344

4345 Manually resetting the devices is not required. Automatically resetting the devices
4346 may be done by zone.
4347

4348 **1010.2.11.5.1 Zone control.** Deactivation of the device(s) may be zone controlled
4349 as follows:
4350

4351 1. All devices on the same floor as the source of activation in fully sprinklered
4352 buildings.
4353

4354 2. All devices on the same floor as the source of activation of the smoke
4355 detection system plus one floor below and all floors above in unsprinklered
4356 buildings.
4357

4358 (Note: When security is still desired after the automatic release of the
4359 system, or when positive latching is necessary for fire door installation, it is still
4360 possible to maintain security provided the appropriate combination of devices
4361 is installed. As an example, use of panic hardware or doorknobs that provide

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

4362 mechanical exiting at all times, but do not function from the exterior unless
4363 electronically activated, will still provide a secured door. It will provide the
4364 required manual exiting but entry by card or code is not available until the
4365 system resets.
4366

4367 No such provision of restricting entry can be used when passage through
4368 the device is necessary for access to the exit. As an example, when the elevator
4369 lobby is secured from the exit stairs by a full floor tenant, upon automatic
4370 activation those devices shall release and access be provided through the tenant
4371 space to the stairs. A manual locking system cannot be installed to insure
4372 security.)
4373

4374 **1010.2.11.6 Door swing freely/single exit motion.** Doors shall swing freely when the
4375 device is released.
4376

4377 (Note: It is required that the exit motion require only one activity. With normal
4378 doors, one activity is pushing the mechanical panic bar or turning the mechanical
4379 doorknob. With an electronic device, one motion is pushing the button; therefore,
4380 pushing the button and pushing a panic bar or turning a doorknob would be two
4381 activities. An acceptable alternative is to use a motion detector (push button is still
4382 required). The motion detector will release the device upon approach and turning the
4383 doorknob is now just one activity. The push button is only necessary should the motion
4384 device fail. Another option is to use an electronic panic bar. One motion, pushing the
4385 bar, is for exiting but entry is controlled. Or, use of an electronic doorknob where
4386 exiting is always mechanical but the entry side does not engage without electronic
4387 activation.)
4388

4389 **Exception:** When doors are required to have positive latching, the building official
4390 and fire chief shall determine:
4391

- 4392 1. if a double motion to exit, i.e. the release of the electronic device then the
4393 operation of a door knob or push bar, is an acceptable exit means; or
4394
- 4395 2. if the latch should be designed to fail in the secure position; or
4396
- 4397 3. whether to deny the usage of the locks.
4398

4399 **1010.2.11.7 Request to exit buttons/break glass boxes/emergency pull boxes.** Exit
4400 buttons, break glass boxes and emergency pull boxes shall be installed as follows:
4401

- 4402 1. **Button.** The release button shall be red in color and at least a 2-inch mushroom
4403 switch or two-inch square lexan palm button.
4404
- 4405 2. **Location.** The button, break glass box or emergency pull box shall be located
4406 40 inches (1016 mm) to 48 inches (1219 mm) vertically above the floor and

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

4407 within five feet (1524 mm) of the secured doors. Ready access shall be provided
4408 to the manual unlocking device.
4409

4410 3. **Sign.** An approved sign shall be adjacent to the button, break glass box or
4411 emergency pull box with the words “Push to Exit” or “Pull to Exit” as
4412 applicable. Sign lettering shall be white on a red background and at least one
4413 inch (25 mm) in height and shall have a stroke of not less than $\frac{1}{8}$ inch (3.2
4414 mm).
4415

4416 4. **Activation.** When operated, the manual unlocking device shall result in direct
4417 interruption of power to the device, independent of the access control system
4418 electronics, and the device shall remain unlocked for a minimum of 30 seconds.
4419 It shall not be required that the release mechanism be constantly held, such as
4420 holding down the button, to get out.
4421

4422 (Note: When buzzing someone out, holding down the button is acceptable;
4423 however, the manual release device installed at the door, even those required in
4424 the occupancy using buzzing, shall not require constant holding down to exit.)
4425

4426 5. **Time delay.** Exit devices in accordance with this section shall not possess a
4427 time delay option.
4428
4429

4430 **1010.2.12 Sensor release of electrically locked egress doors.** Sensor release of electric
4431 locking systems shall be permitted on doors located in the *means of egress* in any
4432 occupancy except Group H where installed and operated in accordance with all of the
4433 following criteria:

4434
4435 7. The sensor shall be installed on the egress side, arranged to detect an occupant
4436 approaching the doors and shall cause the electric locking system to unlock.
4437

4438 8. The electric locks shall be arranged to unlock by a signal from or loss of power to
4439 the sensor.
4440

4441 3. Loss of power to the lock or locking system shall automatically unlock the electric
4442 locks.
4443

4444 4. The doors shall be arranged to unlock from a manual unlocking device located 40
4445 inches to 48 inches (1016 mm to 1219 mm) vertically above the floor and within 5
4446 feet (1524 mm) of the secured doors. Ready access shall be provided to the manual
4447 unlocking device and the device shall be clearly identified by a sign that reads “PUSH
4448 TO EXIT.” When operated, the manual unlocking device shall result in direct
4449 interruption of power to the lock—independent of other electronics—and the electric
4450 lock shall remain unlocked for not less than 30 seconds.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 4451 5. Activation of the building *fire alarm system*, where provided, shall automatically
4452 unlock the electric lock, and the electric lock shall remain unlocked until the fire
4453 alarm system has been reset.
4454
- 4455 6. Activation of the building *automatic sprinkler system* or *fire detection system*, where
4456 provided, shall automatically unlock the electric lock. The electric lock shall remain
4457 unlocked until the *fire alarm system* has been reset.
4458
- 4459 7. Emergency lighting shall be provided on the egress side of the door.
4460
- 4461 8. The door locking system units shall be *listed* in accordance with UL 294.
4462

4463 **1010.2.13 Delayed egress.** Delayed egress locking systems shall be permitted to be
4464 installed on doors serving the following occupancies in buildings that are equipped
4465 throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or an
4466 *approved automatic smoke* or *heat detection system* installed in accordance with Section
4467 907.
4468

- 4469 1. Group B, F, I, M, R, S and U occupancies.
4470
- 4471 2. Group E classroom with an occupant load of less than 50
4472
- 4473 3. In courtrooms in Group A-3 and B occupancies, delayed egress locking systems
4474 shall be permitted to be installed on exit or *exit access* door, in buildings that are
4475 equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section
4476 903.3.1.1.
4477

4478 **1010.2.13.1 Delayed egress locking system.** The delayed egress locking system
4479 shall be installed and operated in accordance with all of the following:
4480

- 4481 1. The delay electronics of the delayed egress locking system shall deactivate
4482 upon actuation of the *automatic sprinkler system* or *automatic fire detection*
4483 *system*, allowing immediate, free egress.
4484
- 4485 2. The delay electronics of the delayed egress locking system shall deactivate
4486 upon loss of power controlling the lock or lock mechanism, allowing
4487 immediate free egress.
4488
- 4489 3. The delayed egress locking system shall have the capability of being
4490 deactivated at the *fire command center* and other *approved* locations.
4491
- 4492 4. An attempt to egress shall initiate an irreversible process that shall allow
4493 such egress in not more than 15 seconds when a physical effort to exit is
4494 applied to the egress side door hardware for not more than 3 seconds.
4495 Initiation of the irreversible process shall activate an audible signal in the

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

4496 vicinity of the door. Once the delay electronics have been deactivated,
4497 rearming the delay electronics shall be by manual means only.

4498
4499 **Exception:** Where *approved*, a delay of not more than 30 seconds is
4500 permitted on a delayed egress door.

4501
4502 5. The egress path from any point shall not pass through more than one delayed egress
4503 locking system.

4504
4505 **Exceptions:**

4506 1. In Group I-1, Condition 2, Group I-2 or I-3 occupancies, the egress path
4507 from any point in the building shall pass through not more than two
4508 delayed egress locking systems provided the combined delay does not
4509 exceed 30 seconds.

4510
4511 2. In Group I-1 Condition 1 or Group I-4 occupancies, the egress path from
4512 any point in the building shall pass through not more than two delayed
4513 egress locking systems provided the combined delay does not exceed 30
4514 seconds and the building is equipped throughout with *automatic*
4515 *sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

4516
4517 6. A sign shall be provided on the door and shall be located above and within 12 inches
4518 (305 mm) of the door exit hardware:

4519
4520 6.1. For doors that swing in the direction of egress, the sign shall read: PUSH
4521 UNTIL ALARM SOUNDS. DOOR CAN BE OPENED IN 15 [30]
4522 SECONDS.

4523
4524 6.2. For doors that swing in the opposite direction of egress, the sign shall read:
4525 PULL UNTIL ALARM SOUNDS. DOOR CAN BE OPENED IN 15 [30]
4526 SECONDS.

4527
4528 6.3. The sign shall comply with the visual character requirements in ICC A117.1.

4529
4530 **Exception:** Where approved, in Group I occupancies, the installation of a sign
4531 is not required where care recipients who because of clinical needs require
4532 restraint or containment as part of the function of the treatment area.

4533
4534 7. Emergency lighting shall be provided on the egress side of the door.

4535
4536 8. The delayed egress locking system units shall be *listed* in accordance with UL 294.

4537
4538 **1010.2.14 Controlled egress doors in Groups I-1 and I-2.** Electric locking systems,
4539 including electromechanical locking systems and electromagnetic locking systems, shall
4540 be permitted to be locked in the means of egress in Group I-1 or I-2 occupancies where the

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

4541 clinical needs of persons receiving care require their containment. Controlled egress doors
4542 shall be permitted in such occupancies where the building is equipped throughout with an
4543 *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or an *approved automatic*
4544 *smoke detection system* installed in accordance with Section 907, provided that the doors
4545 are installed and operate in accordance with all of the following:

- 4546
4547 1. The door locks shall unlock on actuation of the *automatic sprinkler system* or
4548 *automatic smoke detection system*.
- 4549
4550 2. The door locks shall unlock on loss of power controlling the lock or lock mechanism.
4551
- 4552 3. The door locking system shall be installed to have the capability of being unlocked
4553 by a switch located at the *fire command center*, a nursing station or other *approved*
4554 location. The switch shall directly break power to the lock.
4555
- 4556 4. A building occupant shall not be required to pass through more than one door
4557 equipped with a controlled egress locking system before entering an *exit*.
4558
- 4559 5. The procedures for unlocking the doors shall be described and approved as part of
4560 the emergency planning and preparedness required by Chapter 4 of the *Dallas*
4561 [*International*] *Fire Code*.
4562
- 4563 6. All clinical staff shall have the keys, codes or other means necessary to operate the
4564 locking systems.
- 4565
4566 7. Emergency lighting shall be provided at the door.
- 4567
4568 8. The door locking system units shall be listed in accordance with UL 294.

4569 **Exceptions:**

- 4570
4571
4572 1. Items 1 through 4 shall not apply to doors to areas occupied by persons who,
4573 because of clinical needs, require restraint or containment as part of the function
4574 of a psychiatric or cognitive treatment area.
4575
- 4576 2. Items 1 through 4 shall not apply to doors to areas where a *listed* egress control
4577 system is utilized to reduce the risk of child abduction from nursery and obstetric
4578 areas of a Group I-2 *hospital*.
4579

4580 **1010.2.15 Locking arrangements in buildings within correctional facilities.** In
4581 *buildings* within correctional and detention facilities, doors in *means of egress* serving
4582 rooms or spaces occupied by persons whose movements are controlled for security reasons
4583 shall be permitted to be locked where equipped with egress control devices that shall unlock
4584 manually and by not less than one of the following means:

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 4585 1. Activation of an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section
4586 903.3.1.1.
4587
4588 2. Activation of an *approved manual fire alarm box*.
4589
4590 3. A signal from a *constantly attended location*.
4591

4592 **1010.3 Special doors.** Special doors and security grilles shall comply with the requirements
4593 of Sections 1010.3.1 through 1010.3.4
4594

4595 **1010.3.1 Revolving doors.** Revolving doors shall comply with the following:
4596

- 4597 1. Revolving doors shall comply with the BHMA A156.27 and shall be installed in
4598 accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
4599
4600 2. Each revolving door shall be capable of *breakout* in accordance with BHMA
4601 A156.27 and shall provide an aggregate width of not less than 36 inches (914 mm).
4602
4603 3. A revolving door shall not be located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the foot or top
4604 of *stairways* or escalators. A dispersal area shall be provided between the *stairways*
4605 or escalators and the revolving doors.
4606
4607 4. The revolutions per minute (rpm) for a revolving door shall not exceed the
4608 maximum rpm as specified in BHMA A156.27. Manual revolving doors shall
4609 comply with Table 1010.3.1(1). Automatic or *power-operated* revolving doors
4610 shall comply with Table 1010.3.2(2).
4611
4612 5. An emergency stop switch shall be provided near each entry point of a revolving
4613 door within 48 inches (1220 mm) of the door and between 34 inches (864 mm) and
4614 48 inches (1220 mm) above the floor. The activation area of the emergency stop
4615 switch button shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in diameter and shall be red.
4616
4617 6. Each revolving door shall have a side-hinged swinging door which complies with
4618 Section 1010.1 in the same wall and within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the revolving
4619 door.
4620
4621 7. Revolving doors shall not be part of an *accessible route* required by Section 1009
4622 and Chapter 11.
4623

4624 **1010.3.1.1 Egress component.** A revolving door used as a component of a *means of*
4625 *egress* shall comply with Section 1010.3.1 and the following three conditions:
4626

- 4627 1. Revolving doors shall not be given credit for more than 50 percent of the
4628 minimum width or required capacity.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 4629 2. Each revolving door shall be credited with a capacity based on not more than
4630 50-person *occupant load*.
4631
4632 3. Each revolving door shall provide for egress in accordance with BHMA
4633 A156.27 with a *breakout* force of not more than 130 pounds (578 N).
4634

4635 **1010.3.1.2 Other than egress component.** A revolving door used as other than a
4636 component of a *means of egress* shall comply with Section 1010.3.1. The *breakout*
4637 force of a revolving door not used as a component of a *means of egress* shall not be
4638 more than 180 pounds (801 N).
4639

4640 **Exception:** A *breakout* force in excess of 180 pounds (801 N) is permitted if the
4641 *breakout* force is reduced to not more than 130 pounds (578 N) when not less than
4642 one of the following conditions is satisfied:
4643

- 4644 1. There is a power failure or power is removed to the device holding the door
4645 wings in position.
4646
4647 2. There is an actuation of the *automatic sprinkler system* where such system
4648 is provided.
4649
4650 3. There is an actuation of a smoke detection system that is installed in
4651 accordance with Section 907 to provide coverage in areas within the
4652 building that are within 75 feet (22 860 mm) of the revolving doors.
4653
4654 4. There is an actuation of a manual control switch, in an *approved* location
4655 and clearly identified, that reduces the *breakout* force to not more than 130
4656 pounds (578 N).
4657

4658 **1010.3.2 Power-operated doors.** Where *means of egress* doors are operated or assisted
4659 by power, the design shall be such that in the event of power failure, the door is capable of
4660 being opened manually to permit *means of egress* travel or closed where necessary to
4661 safeguard *means of egress*. The forces required to open these doors manually shall not
4662 exceed those specified in Section 1010.1.3, except that the force to set the door in motion
4663 shall not exceed 50 pounds (220 N). The door shall be capable of opening from any
4664 position to the full width of the opening in which such door is installed when a force is
4665 applied to the door on the side from which egress is made. *Power-operated* swinging doors,
4666 *power-operated* sliding doors and *power-operated* folding doors shall comply with BHMA
4667 A156.10. *Power-assisted* swinging doors and low-energy power-operated swinging doors
4668 shall comply with BHMA A156.19. Low-energy *power-operated* sliding doors and low-
4669 energy *power-operated* folding doors shall comply with BHMA A156.38.
4670

4671 **Exceptions:**

- 4672 1. Occupancies in Group I-3.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 4673
4674
4675
4676
4677
4678
4679
4680
4681
2. Special purpose horizontal sliding, accordion or folding doors complying with Section 1010 .3.3.
 3. For a biparting door in the emergency *breakout* mode, a door leaf located within a multiple-leaf opening shall be exempt from the minimum 32-inch (813 mm) single-leaf requirements of Section 1010.1.1, provided a minimum 32-inch (813 mm) clear opening is provided when the two biparting leaves meeting in the center are broken out.

4682
4683
4684
4685
4686

1010.3.3 Special purpose horizontal sliding, accordion or folding doors. In other than Group H occupancies, horizontal sliding doors permitted to be a component of a *means of egress* in accordance with Exception 6 to Section 1010.1.2 shall comply with all of the following criteria:

- 4687
4688
4689
4690
4691
4692
4693
4694
4695
4696
4697
4698
4699
4700
4701
4702
4703
4704
4705
4706
4707
4708
4709
4710
4711
4712
1. The doors shall be power operated and shall be capable of being operated manually in the event of power failure.
 2. The doors shall be openable by a simple method without special knowledge or effort from egress side or sides.
 3. The force required to operate the door shall not exceed 30 pounds (133 N) to set the door in motion and 15 pounds (67 N) to close the door or open it to the minimum required width.
 4. The door shall be openable with a force not to exceed 15 pounds (67 N) when a force of 250 pounds (1100 N) is applied perpendicular to the door adjacent to the operating device.
 5. The door assembly shall comply with the applicable *fire protection rating* and, where rated, shall be self-closing or automatic closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section 716.2.6.6, shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 80 and shall comply with Section 716.
 6. The door assembly shall have an integrated standby power supply.
 7. The door assembly power supply shall be electrically supervised.
 8. The door shall open to the minimum required width within 10 seconds after activation of the operating device.

4713
4714
4715
4716
4717

1010.3.4 Security grilles. In Groups B, F, M and S, horizontal sliding or vertical security grilles are permitted at the main *exit* and shall be openable from the inside without the use of a key or special knowledge or effort during periods that the space is occupied. The grilles shall remain secured in the full-open position during the period of occupancy by the general public. Where two or more exits or access to exits are required, not more than one-

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

4718 half of the *exits* or *exit access doorways* shall be equipped with horizontal sliding or vertical
4719 grilles.

4720

4721 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

4722 **98. Paragraph 1011.5.2, “Riser Height and Tread Depth,” of Subsection 1011.5,**

4723 **“Stair Treads and Risers,” of Section 1011, “Stairways,” of Chapter 10, “Means of Egress,”**

4724 **of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

4725 **“1011.5.2 Riser height and tread depth.** *Stair* riser heights shall be 7 inches (178 mm)
4726 maximum and 4 inches (102 mm) minimum. The riser height shall be measured vertically
4727 between the *nosings* of adjacent treads or between *stairway* landing and the adjacent tread.
4728 Rectangular tread depths shall be 11 inches (279 mm) minimum measured horizontally
4729 between the vertical planes of the foremost projection of adjacent treads and at a right angle to
4730 the tread’s *nosing*. *Winder* treads shall have a minimum tread depth of 11 inches (279 mm)
4731 between the vertical planes of the foremost projection of adjacent treads at the intersections
4732 with the walkline and a minimum tread depth of 10 inches (254 mm) within the clear width of
4733 the *stair*.

4734

4735 **Exceptions:**

4736

4737

4738

4739

4740

4741

4742

4743

4744

4745

4746

4747

4748

4749

4750

4751

4752

4753

4754

4755

4756

4757

4758

1. *Spiral stairways* in accordance with Section 1011.10.
2. *Stairways* connecting stepped *aisles* to cross *aisles* or concourses shall be permitted to use the riser/tread dimension in Section 1030.14.2.
3. In Group R-3 occupancies; within *dwelling units* in Group R-2 occupancies; and in Group U occupancies that are accessory to a Group R-3 occupancy or accessory to individual *dwelling units* in Group R-2 occupancies; the maximum riser height shall be 7³/₄ inches (197 mm); the minimum tread depth shall be 10 inches (254 mm); the minimum *winder* tread depth at the walkline shall be 10 inches (254 mm); and the minimum *winder* tread depth shall be 6 inches (152 mm). A *nosing* projection not less than 3/4 inch (19.1 mm) but not more than 1¹/₄ inches (32 mm) shall be provided on *stairways* with solid risers where the tread depth is less than 11 inches (279 mm).
4. See Section 503.1 of the *Dallas* [~~*International*~~] *Existing Building Code* for the replacement of existing *stairways*.
5. In Group I-3 facilities, *stairways* providing access to guard towers, observation stations and control rooms, not more than 250 square feet (23 m²) in area, shall be permitted to have a maximum riser height of 8 inches (203 mm) and a minimum tread depth of 9 inches (229 mm).

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

4759 6. Private curved stairways used as convenience stairways may be provided with a
4760 minimum width of run of not less than 10 inches (254 mm) measured 6 inches
4761 (152.4 mm) from the interior radius and a maximum width of run of not more than
4762 18 inches (457.2 mm) measured 6 inches (152.4 mm) from the exterior radius.”
4763

4764 Carryover Dallas Amendment

4765 99. Subsection 1011.9, “Curved Stairways,” of Section 1011, “Stairways,” of
4766 Chapter 10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read
4767 as follows:

4768 “1011.9 Curved stairways. Curved stairways with winder treads shall have treads and risers in
4769 accordance with Section 1011.5 and the smallest radius shall be not less than twice the minimum
4770 width or required capacity of the stairway.

4771 Exceptions:

- 4772 1. The radius restriction shall not apply to curved stairways in Group R-3 and within
4773 individual dwelling units in Group R-2.
- 4774 2. Private curved stairways may be used as convenience stairways, provided the width of
4775 the stairway is not less than 44 inches (1711.6 mm) with the interior radius not less
4776 than 44 inches (1711.6 mm). In all cases the stairway must comply with Chapter 6 and
4777 the structural provisions of this code.”
4778
4779
4780
4781

4782 Carryover Dallas Amendment

4783 100. Subsection 1012.1, “Scope,” of Section 1012, “Ramps,” of Chapter 10, “Means
4784 of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:

4785 “1012.1 Scope. The provisions of this section shall apply to ramps used as a component of a
4786 means of egress.

4787 Exceptions:

- 4788 1. Ramped aisles within assembly rooms or spaces shall comply with the provisions in
4789 Section 1030.
- 4790 2. Curb ramps shall comply with ICC A117.1 or with Section 1101.2.
- 4791
4792
4793 3. Vehicle ramps in parking garages for pedestrian exit access shall not be required to
4794 comply with Sections 1012.3 through 1012.10 where they are not an accessible route
4795 serving accessible parking spaces, other required accessible elements or part of an
4796 accessible means of egress.”
4797
4798

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

4799 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

4800 **101. Subsection 1013.5, “Internally Illuminated Exit Signs,” of Section 1013, “Exit**
4801 **Signs,” of Chapter 10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is**
4802 **amended to read as follows:**

4803 **“1013.5 Internally illuminated exit signs.** Electrically powered, *self-luminous* and
4804 *photoluminescent* exit signs shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 924 and shall be
4805 installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions and Chapter 27. Exit signs shall be
4806 illuminated at all times. *Photoluminescent exit signs require plans and documents demonstrating*
4807 *a sufficient source of activation in any given 24-hour period.*”

4810 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

4811 **102. Subsection 1016.2, “Egress Through Intervening Spaces,” of Section 1016,**
4812 **“Exit Access,” of Chapter 10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is**
4813 **amended to read as follows:**

4814 **“1016.2 Egress through intervening spaces.** Egress through intervening spaces shall comply
4815 with this section.

4816
4817 1. *Exit access* through an enclosed elevator lobby is permitted. Where access to two or more
4818 exits or exit access doorways is required in Section 1006.2.1, access to not less than one of
4819 the required *exits* shall be provided without travel through the enclosed elevator lobbies
4820 required by Section 3006. Where the path of *exit access* travel passes through an enclosed
4821 elevator lobby, the level of protection required for the enclosed elevator lobby is not
4822 required to be extended to the *exit* unless direct access to an *exit* is required by other
4823 sections of this code.

4824
4825 2. Egress from a room or space shall not pass through adjoining or intervening rooms or areas,
4826 except where such adjoining rooms or areas and the area served are accessory to one or the
4827 other, are not a Group H occupancy and provide a discernible path of egress travel to an
4828 *exit*.

4829
4830 **Exception:** *Means of egress* are not prohibited through adjoining or intervening rooms
4831 or spaces in a Group H, S or F occupancy where the adjoining or intervening rooms
4832 or spaces are the same or a lesser hazard occupancy group.

4833
4834 3. An *exit access* shall not pass through a room that can be locked to prevent egress.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 4835 4. *Means of egress* from *dwelling units* or sleeping areas shall not lead through other sleeping
4836 areas, toilet rooms or bathrooms.
4837
- 4838 5. Egress shall not pass through kitchens, storage rooms, closets or spaces used for similar
4839 purposes.
4840

4841 **Exceptions:**

- 4842
- 4843 1. *Means of egress* are not prohibited through a kitchen area serving adjoining rooms
4844 constituting part of the same *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit*.
4845
- 4846 2. *Means of egress* are not prohibited through stockrooms in Group M
4847 occupancies where all of the following are met:
4848
- 4849 2.1. The stock is of the same hazard classification as that found in the main retail
4850 area.
4851
- 4852 2.2. Not more than 50 percent of the *exit access* is through the stockroom.
4853
- 4854 2.3. The stockroom is not subject to locking from the egress side.
4855
- 4856 2.4. There is a demarcated, minimum 44-inch-wide (1118 mm) *aisle* defined by
4857 full- or partial-height fixed walls or similar construction that will maintain
4858 the required width and lead directly from the retail area to the *exit* without
4859 obstructions.
4860
- 4861 3. In a building protected throughout by an *approved automatic sprinkler system*, one
4862 *exit* may pass through a kitchen or storeroom provided:
4863
- 4864 3.1. The *exit* door must be visible upon entering the kitchen or storeroom and
4865 must be clearly marked and identifiable as an *exit*; and
4866
- 4867 3.2. The required *exit* width through the kitchen or storeroom must be
4868 permanently marked and must be maintained clear and unobstructed.
4869

4870 **1016.2.1 Multiple tenants.** Where more than one tenant occupies any one floor of a
4871 building or structure, each tenant space, *dwelling unit* and *sleeping unit* shall be provided
4872 with access to the required *exits* without passing through adjacent tenant spaces, *dwelling*
4873 *units* and *sleeping units*.
4874

4875 **Exception:** The *means of egress* from a smaller tenant space shall not be prohibited
4876 from passing through a larger adjoining tenant space where such rooms or spaces of the
4877 smaller tenant occupy less than 10 percent of the area of the larger tenant space through
4878 which they pass; are the same or similar occupancy group; a discernible path of egress
4879 travel to an exit is provided; and the *means of egress* into the adjoining space is not

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

subject to locking from the egress side. A required means of egress serving the larger tenant space shall not pass through the smaller tenant space or spaces.”

Carryover Dallas Amendment

103. Table 1017.2, “Exit Access Travel Distance,” of Subsection 1017.2, “Limitations,” of Section 1017, “Exit Access Travel Distance,” of Chapter 10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:

**“TABLE 1017.2
EXIT ACCESS TRAVEL DISTANCE^a”**

OCCUPANCY	WITHOUT SPRINKLER SYSTEM (feet)	WITH SPRINKLER SYSTEM (feet)
A, E, [F-1], M, R[S-1]	200 ^c	250 ^b
I-1	Not Permitted	250 ^b
<u>B, F-1, S-1</u>	200	300 ^c
F-2, S-2, U	300	400 ^c
H-1	Not Permitted	75 ^d
H-2	Not Permitted	100 ^d
H-3	Not Permitted	150 ^d
H-4	Not Permitted	175 ^d
H-5	Not Permitted	200 ^c
I-2, I-3	Not Permitted	200 ^c
I-4	150	200 ^c

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

- a. See the following sections for modifications to *exit access* travel distance requirements:
 - Section 402.8: For the distance limitation in malls.
 - Section 407.4: For the distance limitation in Group I-2.
 - Sections 408.6.1 and 408.8.1: For the distance limitations in Group I-3.
 - Section 411.2: For the distance limitation in special amusement buildings.
 - Section 412.6: For the distance limitations in aircraft manufacturing facilities.
 - Section 1006.2.2.2: For the distance limitation in refrigeration machinery rooms.
 - Section 1006.2.2.3: For the distance limitation in refrigerated rooms and spaces.
 - Section 1006.3.4: For buildings with one exit.
 - Section 1017.2.2: For increased distance limitation in Groups F-1 and S-1.
 - Section 1030.7: For increased limitation in assembly seating.
 - Section 3103.4: For temporary structures.
 - Section 3104.9: For pedestrian walkways.
- b. Buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2. See Section 903 for occupancies where *automatic sprinkler systems* are permitted in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2.
- c. Buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
- d. Group H occupancies equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.2.5.1.
- e. Group R-3 and R-4 buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3 See Section 903.2.8 for occupancies where automatic sprinkler systems are permitted in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3.”

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

4914 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

4915 **104. Subsection 1020.2, “Construction,” of Section 1020, “Corridors,” of Chapter**
4916 **10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as**
4917 **follows:**

4918 **“1020.2 Construction.** *Corridors* shall be fire-resistance rated in accordance with Table 1020.2.1.
4919 The *corridor* walls required to be fire-resistance rated shall comply with Section 708 for *fire*
4920 *partitions*.

4921
4922 **Exceptions:**

- 4923
- 4924 1. *A fire-resistance rating* is not required for *corridors* in an occupancy in Group E where
4925 each room that is used for instruction has not less than one door opening directly to the
4926 exterior and rooms for assembly purposes have not less than one-half of the required
4927 *means of egress* doors opening directly to the exterior. Exterior doors specified in this
4928 exception are required to be at ground level.
 - 4929
 - 4930 2. *A fire-resistance rating* is not required for *corridors* contained within a *dwelling unit*
4931 or *sleeping unit* in an occupancy in Groups I-1 and R.
 - 4932
 - 4933 3. *A fire-resistance rating* is not required for *corridors* in *open parking garages*.
 - 4934
 - 4935 4. *A fire-resistance rating* is not required for *corridors* in an occupancy in Group B that
4936 is a space requiring only a single *means of egress* complying with Section 1006.2.
 - 4937
 - 4938 5. *Corridors* adjacent to the *exterior walls* of buildings shall be permitted to have
4939 unprotected openings on unrated *exterior walls* where unrated walls are permitted by
4940 Table 705.5 and unprotected openings are permitted by Table 705.8.
 - 4941
 - 4942 6. *Corridor walls and ceilings within a single tenant space as listed in Table 1020.2.2 and*
4943 *meeting all of the following conditions:*
4944
 - 4945 1. *Approved automatic smoke-detection is installed along the path of egress within*
4946 *the corridor.*
 - 4947
 - 4948 2. *The actuation of any detector must activate self-annunciating alarms audible in all*
4949 *areas served by the corridor.*
 - 4950
 - 4951 3. *The smoke detection system must be connected to an approved automatic fire alarm*
4952 *system where such a system is provided.”*
 - 4953

4954 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

4955 **105. Table 1020.2, “Corridor Fire-Resistance Rating,” of Subsection 1020.2,**
4956 **“Construction,” of Section 1020, “Corridors,” of Chapter 10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021**
4957 **International Building Code is renumbered as Table 1020.2.1 and amended to read as**
4958 **follows:**

4959 **“TABLE 1020.2.1**
4960 **CORRIDOR FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING**
4961

OCCUPANCY	OCCUPANT LOAD SERVED BY CORRIDOR	REQUIRED FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)	
		Without sprinkler system	With sprinkler system
H-1, H-2, H-3	All	Not Permitted	1 ^c
H-4, H-5	Greater than 30	Not Permitted	1 ^c
A, B, E, F, M, S, U	Greater than 30	1	0
R ^e	Greater than 10	Not Permitted	0.5 ^c / 1 ^d
I-2 ^a	All	Not Permitted	0
I-1, I-3	All	Not Permitted	1 ^{b, c}
I-4	All	1	0

- 4962
- 4963 a. For requirements for occupancies in Group I-2, see Sections 407.2 and 407.3.
- 4964 b. For a reduction in the *fire-resistance rating* for occupancies in Group I-3, see Section 408.8.
- 4965 c. Buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or
- 4966 903.3.1.2 where allowed.
- 4967 d. Group R-3 and R-4 buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with
- 4968 Section 903.3.1.3. See Section 903.2.8 for occupancies where automatic sprinkler systems are permitted in
- 4969 accordance with Section 903.3.1.3.
- 4970 e. In Group R, Divisions 2 and 4 equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with
- 4971 Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, standard ½ inch gypsum wallboard may be substituted for Type X gypsum in
- 4972 construction of the *corridor*. *Corridor* openings must be protected with *approved* self-closing 1¾ inch solid-
- 4973 core door installations or *approved* equivalent. See Section 717 for requirements on fire and smoke dampers.”
- 4974

4975 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

4976 **106. Subsection 1020.2, “Construction,” of Section 1020, “Corridors,” of Chapter**
4977 **10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new**
4978 **Table 1020.2.2, “Corridor Fire-Resistance Rating of Single Tenant Space,” to read as**
4979 **follows:**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

“TABLE 1020.2.2

CORRIDOR FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING OF SINGLE TENANT SPACE

4980
4981
4982

CATEGORY	NATURE OF OCCUPANCY SERVED BY CORRIDOR	REQUIRED FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)	
		Without smoke detectors	With smoke detectors
I	Uses and occupancies except those listed in Categories II and III	1	0
II^{a, b}	Building and other structures that represent a substantial hazard to human life in the event of failure, including but not limited to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Buildings and other structures whose primary occupancy is public assembly with an occupant load greater than 300. • Buildings and other structures containing elementary school, secondary school, or day care facilities with an occupant load greater than 250. • Buildings and other structures containing adult education facilities such as colleges and universities, with an occupant load greater than 500. • Group I-2 occupancies with an occupant load of 50 or more resident care recipients but not having surgery or emergency treatment facilities. • Group I-3 occupancies. • Any other occupancy with an occupant load greater than 5,000, • Power-generating stations, water treatment facilities for potable water, waste water treatment facilities and other public utility facilities not included in Risk Category III. • Buildings and other structures not included in Risk Category III containing quantities of toxic or explosive materials that exceed maximum allowable quantities per control area as given in Table 307.1(1) or per outdoor control area in accordance with the <i>Dallas Fire Code</i> and are sufficient to pose a threat to the public if released. 	1	1
III^{a, b}	Buildings and other structures designated as essential facilities, including but not limited to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Group I-2 occupancies having surgery or emergency treatment facilities. • Fire, rescue, ambulance and police stations and emergency vehicle garages. • Designated earthquake, hurricane or other emergency shelters. • Designated emergency preparedness, communications and operations centers and other facilities required for emergency response. • Power-generating stations and other public utility facilities required as emergency backup facilities required as emergency backup facilities for Risk Category III structures. • Buildings and other structures containing quantities of highly toxic materials that exceed maximum allowable quantities per control area in accordance with the <i>Dallas Fire Code</i> and are sufficient to pose a threat to the public if released. 	1	1

4983

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Aviation control towers, air traffic control centers and emergency aircraft hangars.• Buildings and other structures having critical national defense functions.• Water storage facilities and pump structures required to maintain water pressure for fire suppression.		
--	--	--	--

- 4984 a. For the requirements for occupancies in Group I-2, see Section 407.2.
4985 b. For the requirements for occupancies in Group I-3, see Section 408.8.”

4986

Carryover Dallas Amendment

4987 **107. Subsection 1023.4, “Openings,” of Section 1023, “Interior Exit Stairways and**

4988 **Ramps,” of Chapter 10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is**

4989 **amended to read as follows:**

4990 **1023.4 Openings.** *Interior exit stairway* and *ramp* opening protectives shall be in accordance
4991 with the requirements of Section 716.

4992
4993 Openings in *interior exit stairways* and *ramps* other than unprotected exterior openings shall be
4994 limited to those required for *exit access* to the enclosure from normally occupied spaces and for
4995 egress from the enclosure.
4996

4997 Elevators shall not open into *interior exit stairways* and *ramps*.
4998

4999
5000 **1023.5 Penetrations.** Penetrations into or through interior exit *stairways* and *ramps* are
5001 prohibited except for the following:

- 5002 1. Equipment and ductwork necessary for independent ventilation or pressurization.
5003 2. *Fire protection systems*.
5004 3. Security systems.
5005 4. Two-way communication systems.
5006 5. Electrical raceway for fire department communication systems.
5007 6. Electrical raceway serving the *interior exit stairway* and *ramp* and terminating at a steel box
5008 not exceeding 16 square inches (0.010 m²).
5009 7. Structural elements supporting the *interior exit stairway* or *ramp* or enclosure, such as beams
5010 or joists.
5011 8. Equipment and piping necessary for Fire Fighter Air Replenishment System.
5012

5013 Such penetrations shall be protected in accordance with Section 714. There shall not be
5014 penetrations or communication openings, whether protected or not, between adjacent interior
5015 exit *stairways* and *ramps*.
5016

5017 **Exception:** *Membrane penetrations* shall be permitted on the outside of the *interior exit*
5018 *stairway* and *ramp*. Such penetrations shall be protected in accordance with Section 714.4.2.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

Carryover Dallas Amendment

108. Subsection 1023.12, “Smokeproof Enclosures,” of Section 1023, “Interior Exit

Stairways and Ramps,” of Chapter 10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building

Code is amended to read as follows:

“**1023.12 Smokeproof enclosures.** Where required by Section 403.5.4, ~~405.7.2,~~ ~~412.2.2.1~~ ~~1007.1.1,~~ or ~~1007.1.3.2~~ interior exit stairways and ramps shall be smokeproof enclosures in accordance with Section 909.20.

1023.12.1 Termination and extension. A smokeproof enclosure shall terminate at an exit discharge or a public way. The smokeproof enclosure shall be permitted to be extended by an exit passageway in accordance with Section 1023.3. The exit passageway shall be without openings other than the fire door assembly required by Section 1023.3.1 and those necessary for egress from the exit passageway. The exit passageway shall be separated from the remainder of the building by 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

Exceptions:

1. Openings in the exit passageway serving a smokeproof enclosure are permitted where the exit passageway is protected and pressurized in the same manner as the smokeproof enclosure, and openings are protected as required for access from other floors.
2. The fire barrier separating the smokeproof enclosure from the exit passageway is not required, provided the exit passageway is protected and pressurized in the same manner as the smokeproof enclosure.
3. A smokeproof enclosure shall be permitted to egress through areas on the level of exit discharge or vestibules as permitted by Section 1028.

1023.12.2 Enclosure access. Access to the stairway or ramp within a smokeproof enclosure shall be by way of a vestibule or an open exterior balcony.

Exception: Access is not required by way of a vestibule or exterior balcony for stairways and ramps using the pressurization alternative complying with Section 909.20.5.”

Carryover Dallas Amendment

109. Subparagraph 1030.1.1, “Spaces Under Grandstands and Bleachers,” of

Paragraph 1030.1.1, “Bleachers,” of Subsection 1030.1, “General,” of Section 1030,

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5058 “Assembly,” of Chapter 10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is
5059 amended to read as follows:

5060 “1030.1.1.1 Spaces under grandstands and bleachers. Spaces under *grandstands* or
5061 *bleachers* shall be separated by *fire barriers* complying with Section 707 and horizontal
5062 assemblies complying with Section 711 with not less than 1-hour *fire-resistance-rated*
5063 construction.

5064
5065
5066

Exceptions:

- 5067 1. Ticket booths less than 100 square feet in area.
5068
5069 2. Toilet rooms.
5070
5071 3. ~~Other accessory use areas 1,000 square feet or less in area and equipped with an~~
5072 ~~*automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.~~
5073
5074 4. Spaces less than 1000 square feet and built to prevent the extension of fire and
5075 hot gases through penetrations in walls and floors; built to block the free
5076 passage of fire and hot gases within a concealed space; and equipped with
5077 openings of either solid wood doors or solid or honeycomb core steel doors not
5078 less than 1 3/8 inches (34.9 mm) in thickness or an equivalent, or doors/shutters
5079 in compliance with Section 716.5.3 with a fire protection rating of not less than
5080 20 minutes.
5081
5082 5. Spaces equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance
5083 with Section 903.3.1.1.”
5084

5085 **Remove Dallas Amendment**

5086 **110. Subsection 1031.1, “General,” of Section 1031, “Emergency Escape and**
5087 **Rescue,” of Chapter 10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is**

5088 **amended to read as follows:**

5089 “1031.1 **General.** *Emergency escape and rescue openings* shall comply with the requirements of
5090 this section.

5091 **1031.2 Where required.** In addition to the *means of egress* required by this chapter, *emergency*
5092 *escape and rescue openings* shall be provided in the following occupancies:

- 5093 1. Group R-2 occupancies located in stories with only one *exit* or *access* to only one *exit*
5094 as permitted by Table 1006.3.4(1) and 1006.3.4(2).
5095 2. Group R-3 and R-4 occupancies.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5096 *Basements* and sleeping rooms below the fourth *story above grade plane* shall have not fewer than
5097 one exterior *emergency escape and rescue opening* in accordance with this section. Where
5098 *basements* contain one or more sleeping rooms, *emergency escape and rescue openings* shall be
5099 required in each sleeping room but shall not be required in adjoining areas of the *basement*. Such
5100 openings shall open directly into a *public way* or to a *yard* or *court* that opens to a *public way*.

5101 **Exceptions:**

- 5102 1. *Basements* with a ceiling height of less than 80 inches (2032 mm) shall not be required
- 5103 to have *emergency escape and rescue openings*.
- 5104 2. *Emergency escape and rescue openings* are not required from *basements* or sleeping
- 5105 rooms that have an *exit door* or *exit access door* that opens directly into a *public way*
- 5106 or to a *yard, court* or exterior egress balcony that opens to a *public way*.
- 5107 3. *Basements* without *habitable spaces* and having not more than 200 square feet (18.6
- 5108 m²) in floor area shall not be required to have *emergency escape and rescue openings*.
- 5109 4. *Storm shelters* are not required to comply with this section where the shelter is
- 5110 constructed in accordance with ICC 500.
- 5111 5. Within individual *dwelling* and *sleeping units* in Group R-2 and R-3, where the building
- 5112 is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with
- 5113 Section 903.3.1.1, 903.1.3.1.2 or 903.1.3.1.3, *sleeping rooms* in *basements* shall not be
- 5114 required to have *emergency escape and rescue openings* provided that the basement
- 5115 has one of the following:
- 5116

5117 5.1. One *means of egress* and one *emergency escape and rescue opening*.

5118 5.2. Two *means of egress*.

5119 **CHAPTER 11**

5120 **ACCESSIBILITY**

5121 **Carryover Dallas/COG Amendment**

5122 **111. Subsection 1102.1, “Design,” of Section 1102, “General,” of Chapter 11,**

5123 **“Accessibility,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

5124 **“1102.1 Design.** Buildings and facilities shall be designed and constructed to be *accessible* in
5125 accordance with this code and ICC A117.1.

5126 **Exceptions:**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 5137 1. Components of projects regulated by and registered with the Architectural Barriers
5138 Division of the Texas Department of Licensing and Regulation shall be deemed to be
5139 in compliance with the requirements of this chapter.
5140
- 5141 2. FHA Unit Type C dwelling units designed and constructed in accordance with the Fair
5142 Housing Act Design Manual—1996 (Updated 1998) will be considered in compliance
5143 with the applicable requirements of this chapter.”
5144

Carryover Dallas Amendment

5145 **112. Paragraph 1103.2.5, “Construction Site,” of Subsection 1103.2, “General**
5146 **Exceptions,” of Section 1103, “Scoping Requirements,” of Chapter 11, “Accessibility,” of**
5147 **the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**
5148

5149 **“1103.2.5 Construction sites.** Structures, *sites* and equipment directly associated with the
5150 actual processes of construction including, but not limited to, scaffolding, bridging, materials
5151 hoists, materials storage, [ø] construction trailers or portable toilet units provided for use
5152 exclusively by construction personnel on a construction site are not required to comply with
5153 this chapter.”
5154

Carryover Dallas Amendment

5155 **113. Subsection 1103.2, “General Exceptions,” of Section 1103, “Scoping**
5156 **Requirements,” of Chapter 11, “Accessibility,” of the 2021 International Building Code is**
5157 **amended by adding a new Paragraph 1103.2.15, “Restricted Occupancy Spaces,” to read as**
5158 **follows:**
5159

5160 **“1103.2.15 Restricted occupancy spaces.** Vertical access (elevators and platform lifts) is not
5161 required for the second floor of two-story control buildings located within a chemical
5162 manufacturing facility where the second floor is restricted to employees and does not contain
5163 common areas or employment opportunities not otherwise available in *accessible* locations
5164 within the same building.”
5165

Carryover Dallas Amendment

5166 **114. Subsection 1106.2, “Required,” of Section 1106, “Parking and Passenger**
5167 **Loading Facilities,” of Chapter 11, “Accessibility,” of the 2021 International Building Code**
5168 **is amended to read as follows:**
5169

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5170 “**1106.2 Required.** Where parking is provided, *accessible* parking spaces shall be provided in
5171 compliance with Table 1106.2 in addition to the requirements of the Dallas Development Code,
5172 except as required by Sections 1106.3 through 1106.5. Where more than one parking facility is
5173 provided on a *site*, the number of parking spaces required to be *accessible* shall be calculated
5174 separately for each parking facility.

5175
5176 **Exception:** This section does not apply to parking spaces used exclusively for buses, trucks,
5177 other delivery vehicles, law enforcement vehicles or vehicular impound and motor pools where
5178 lots accessed by the public are provided with an *accessible* passenger loading zone.”

5180 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

5181 **115. Subsection 1108.2, “Design,” of Section 1108, “Dwelling Units and Sleeping**
5182 **Units,” of Chapter 11, “Accessibility,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended**
5183 **to read as follows:**

5184 “**1108.2 Design.** *Dwelling units and sleeping units* that are required to be *Accessible units, Type A*
5185 *units* and *Type B units* shall comply with the applicable portions of Chapter 10 of ICC A117.1.
5186 Units required to be *Type A units* are permitted to be designed and constructed as *Accessible units*.
5187 Units required to be *Type B units* are permitted to be designed and constructed as *Accessible units*
5188 or as *Type A units*. Units required to be *FHA Type-C units* are permitted to be designed and
5189 constructed as *Accessible units, Type A units* or *Type B units*.

5191 **1108.2.1 Alternate design.** *FHA Type-C dwelling units* designed and constructed with the
5192 following items in accordance with the *Fair Housing Act Design Manual—1996 (Updated*
5193 *1998)* are considered in compliance with the fair housing requirements of this chapter.
5194

5195 **1108.2.1.1 Multifamily dwellings.** All covered multifamily dwellings built for first
5196 occupancy after March 13, 1991 with a building entrance on an *accessible route* must be
5197 designed and constructed in such a manner that:
5198

- 5199 1. The public and common use areas are readily *accessible* to and useable by
5200 handicapped persons;
5201
5202 2. All the doors designed to allow passage into and within all premises are sufficiently
5203 wide to allow passage by handicapped persons in wheelchairs; and
5204
5205 3. All premises within covered multifamily dwelling units contain the following
5206 features of adaptable design:
5207
5208 3.1. An *accessible route* into and through the covered dwelling unit;
5209
5210 3.2. Light switches, electrical outlets, thermostats and other environmental
5211 controls in accessible locations;

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5212 3.3. Reinforcements in bathroom walls to allow later installation of grab bars
5213 around the toilet, tub, shower stall and shower seat, where such facilities are
5214 provided; and
5215

5216 3.4. Usable kitchens and bathrooms such that an individual in a wheelchair can
5217 maneuver about the space.”
5218

5219 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

5220 **116. Subsection 1108.6, “Group R,” of Section 1108, “Dwelling Units and Sleeping**
5221 **Units,” of Chapter 11, “Accessibility,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended**
5222 **to read as follows:**

5223 **“1108.6 Group R. Accessible units, Type A units, [and] Type B units and FHA ~~Type C~~ units** shall
5224 **be provided in Group R occupancies in accordance with Sections 1108.6.1 through 1108.6.4.**

5225 **1108.6.1 Group R-1. Accessible units and Type B units** shall be provided in Group R-1
5226 occupancies in accordance with Sections 1108.6.1.1 and 1108.6.1.2.

5227 **1108.6.1.1 Accessible units.** Accessible dwelling units and sleeping units shall be
5228 provided in accordance with Table 1108.6.1.1. On a multiple-building site, where structures
5229 contain more than 50 dwelling units or sleeping units, the number of Accessible units shall be
5230 determined per structure. On a multiple-building site, where structures contain 50 or fewer
5231 dwelling units or sleeping units, all dwelling units and sleeping units on a site shall be
5232 considered to determine the total number of Accessible units. Accessible units shall be
5233 dispersed among the various classes of units.

5234 **1108.6.1.2 Type B units.** In structures with four or more dwelling units or sleeping units
5235 intended to be occupied as a residence, every dwelling unit and sleeping unit intended to be
5236 occupied as a residence shall be a Type B unit.

5237 **Exception:** The number of Type B units is permitted to be reduced in accordance with
5238 Section 1108.7.

5239 **1108.6.2 Group R-2. Accessible units, Type A units, [and] Type B units, and FHA ~~Type C~~ units**
5240 shall be provided in Group R-2 occupancies in accordance with Sections 1108.6.2.1 through
5241 1108.6.2.3. Fire walls are not considered in the determination of the number of dwelling units
5242 in a structure.

5243 **1108.6.2.1 Live/work units.** In live/work units constructed in accordance with Section 419,
5244 the nonresidential portion is required to be accessible. In a structure where there are four
5245 or more live/work units intended to be occupied as a residence, the residential portion of

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5252 the *live/work unit* shall be a *Type B unit* or FHA ~~Type C~~ units must be provided in
5253 accordance with Section 1108.6.2.1.1.
5254

5255 **Exception:** The number of *Type B units* is permitted to be reduced in accordance with
5256 Section 1108.7.
5257

5258 **1108.6.2.1.1 FHA ~~Type C~~ units.** In structures with four or more *dwelling units* or
5259 *sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence* in a single structure, every
5260 *dwelling unit* shall be at least an FHA ~~Type C~~ unit.
5261

5262 **Exception:** The number of FHA ~~Type C~~ units is permitted to be reduced in
5263 accordance with the *Fair Housing Act Design Manual—1996 (Updated 1998)*.
5264

5265 **1108.6.2.2 Apartment houses, monasteries and convents.** *Type A units* and *Type B units*
5266 shall be provided in apartment houses, monasteries and convents in accordance with
5267 Sections 1108.6.2.2.1 and 1108.6.2.2.2 or FHA ~~Type C~~ units must be provided in
5268 accordance with Section 1108.6.2.1.1. Bedrooms in monasteries and convents shall be
5269 counted as units for the purpose of determining the number of units. Where the bedrooms
5270 are grouped in *sleeping units*, only one bedroom in each *sleeping unit* shall count toward
5271 the number of required *Type A units*.
5272

5273 **1108.6.2.2.1 Type A units.** In Group R-2 occupancies containing more than 20
5274 *dwelling units* or *sleeping units*, at least 2 percent but not less than one of the units shall
5275 be a *Type A unit*. All Group R-2 units on a *site* shall be considered to determine the
5276 total number of units and the required number of *Type A units*. *Type A units* shall be
5277 dispersed among the various classes of units.
5278

5279 **Exceptions:**

- 5281 1. The number of *Type A units* is permitted to be reduced in accordance with
5282 Section 1108.7.
5283
- 5284 2. *Existing structures* on a *site* shall not contribute to the total number of units
5285 on a *site*.
5286

5287 **1108.6.2.2.2 Type B units.** Where there are four or more *dwelling units* or *sleeping*
5288 *units intended to be occupied as a residence* in a single structure, every *dwelling unit*
5289 and *sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence* shall be a *Type B unit*.
5290

5291 **Exception:** The number of *Type B units* is permitted to be reduced in accordance
5292 with Section 1108.7
5293

5294 **1108.6.2.3 Group R-2 other than live/work units, apartment houses, monasteries and**
5295 **convents.** In Group R-2 occupancies, other than *live/work units*, apartment houses,
5296 monasteries and convents falling within the scope of Sections 1108.6.2.1 and 1108.6.2.2,

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5297 *Accessible units* and *Type B units* shall be provided in accordance with Sections
5298 1108.6.2.3.1 and 1108.6.2.3.2 or FHA ~~Type C~~ units must be provided in accordance with
5299 Section 1108.6.2.1.1. Bedrooms within congregate living facilities shall be counted as
5300 *sleeping units* for the purpose of determining the number of units. Where the *sleeping units*
5301 are grouped into suites, only one *sleeping unit* in each suite shall be permitted to count
5302 towards the number of required *Accessible units*.
5303

5304 **1108.6.2.3.1 Accessible units.** *Accessible dwelling units* and *sleeping units* shall be
5305 provided in accordance with Table 1108.6.1.1.
5306

5307 **1108.6.2.3.2 Type B units.** Where there are four or more *dwelling units* or *sleeping*
5308 *units intended to be occupied as a residence* in a single structure, every *dwelling unit*
5309 and every *sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence* shall be a *Type B unit*.
5310

5311 **Exception:** The number of *Type B units* is permitted to be reduced in accordance
5312 with Section 1108.7.
5313

5314 **1108.6.3 Group R-3.** In Group R-3 occupancies where there are four or more *dwelling units*
5315 or *sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence* in a single structure, every *dwelling*
5316 *unit* and *sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence* shall be a *Type B unit* or an FHA
5317 ~~Type C~~ unit. Bedrooms within congregate living facilities, dormitories, sororities, fraternities,
5318 and boarding houses shall be counted as *sleeping units* for the purpose of determining the
5319 number of units.
5320

5321 **Exceptions:**

- 5322
- 5323 1. The number of *Type B units* is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section
5324 1108.7.
5325
 - 5326 2. The number of FHA ~~Type C~~ units is permitted to be reduced in accordance with
5327 the *Fair Housing Act Design Manual*—1996 (Updated 1998).
5328

5329 **1108.6.4 Group R-4.** *Accessible units* and *Type B units* shall be provided in Group R-4
5330 occupancies in accordance with Sections 1108.6.4.1 and 1108.6.4.2 or FHA ~~Type C~~ units must
5331 be provided in accordance with Section 1108.6.2.1.1.
5332

5333 **1108.6.4.1 Accessible units.** In Group R-4 Condition 1, at least one of the *dwelling units*
5334 or *sleeping units* shall be an *Accessible unit*. In Group R-4 Condition 2, at least two of the
5335 *dwelling units* or *sleeping units* shall be an *Accessible unit*. Bedrooms in Group R-4
5336 facilities shall be counted as *sleeping units* for the purpose of determining the number of
5337 units.
5338

5339 **1108.6.4.2 Type B units.** In structures with four or more *dwelling units* or *sleeping units*
5340 *intended to be occupied as a residence*, every *dwelling unit* and *sleeping unit intended to*

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5341

be occupied as a residence shall be a Type B unit.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5342 **Exception:** The number of *Type B units* is permitted to be reduced in accordance with
5343 Section 1108.7.”

5344

5345 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

5346 **117. Subsection 1108.7, “General Exceptions,” of Section 1108, “Dwelling Units**
5347 **and Sleeping Units,” of Chapter 11, “Accessibility,” of the 2021 International Building Code**
5348 **is amended to read as follows:**

5349 **“1108.7 General exceptions.** Where specifically permitted by Section 1108.5 or 1108.6, the
5350 required number of *Type A units* and *Type B units* is permitted to be reduced in accordance with
5351 Sections 1108.7.1 through 1108.7.5.

5352

5353 **1108.7.1 Structures without elevator service.** Where no elevator service is provided in a
5354 structure, only the *dwelling units* and *sleeping units* that are located on stories indicated in
5355 Sections 1108.7.1.1 and 1108.7.1.2 are required to be *Type A units*, [~~and~~] *Type B units*, or *FHA*
5356 *Type C units* [~~respectively~~]. The number of *Type A units* shall be determined in accordance
5357 with Section 1108.6.2.2.1.

5358

5359 **1108.7.1.1 One story with Type B or FHA Type C units required.** At least one *story*
5360 containing *dwelling units* or *sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence* shall be
5361 provided with an *accessible* entrance from the exterior of the structure and all units
5362 *intended to be occupied as a residence* on that *story* shall be *Type B units* or *FHA Type C*
5363 *units*.

5364

5365 **1108.7.1.2 Additional stories with Type B units or FHA Type C units.** Where stories
5366 have entrances not included in determining compliance with Section 1108.7.1.1, and such
5367 entrances are proximate to arrival points intended to serve units on that *story*, as indicated
5368 in Items 1 and 2, all *dwelling units* and *sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence*
5369 served by that entrance on that *story* shall be *Type B units* or *FHA Type C units*.

5370

5371 1. Where the slopes of the undisturbed *site* measured between the planned entrance
5372 and all vehicular or pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the
5373 planned entrance are 10 percent or less, and

5374

5375 2. Where the slopes of the planned finished grade measured between the entrance and
5376 all vehicular or pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the planned
5377 entrance are 10 percent or less.

5378

5379 Where arrival points are within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the entrance, the closest
5380 arrival point shall be used to determine access unless that arrival point serves the *story*
5381 required by Section 1108.7.1.1.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5382 **1108.7.2 Multistory units.** A *multistory dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* that is not provided with
5383 elevator service is not required to be a *Type B unit* or FHA Type-C unit. Where a *multistory*
5384 *unit* is provided with external elevator service to only one floor, the floor provided with
5385 elevator service shall be the primary entry to the unit, shall comply with the requirements for
5386 a *Type B unit* or an FHA Type-C unit and, where provided within the unit, a living area, a
5387 kitchen and a toilet facility shall be provided on that floor.
5388

5389 **1108.7.3 Elevator service to the lowest story with units.** Where elevator service in the
5390 building provides an *accessible route* only to the lowest *story* containing *dwelling units* or
5391 *sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence*, only the units on that *story* that are
5392 *intended to be occupied as a residence* are required to be *Type B units* or FHA Type-C units.
5393

5394 **1108.7.4 Site impracticality.** On a *site* with multiple non-elevator buildings, the number of
5395 units required by Section 1108.7.1 to be *Type B units* or FHA Type-C units is permitted to be
5396 reduced to a percentage that is equal to the percentage of the entire *site* having grades, prior to
5397 development, that are less than 10 percent, provided that all of the following conditions are
5398 met:
5399

- 5400 1. Not less than 20 percent of the units required by Section 1108.7.1 on the *site* are *Type*
5401 *B units* or FHA Type-C units;
- 5402
5403 2. Units required by Section 1108.7.1, where the slope between the building entrance
5404 serving the units on that *story* and a pedestrian or vehicular arrival point is no greater
5405 than 8.33 percent, are *Type B units* or FHA Type-C units;
- 5406
5407 3. Units required by Section 1108.7.1, where an elevated walkway is planned between a
5408 building entrance serving the units on that *story* and a pedestrian or vehicular arrival
5409 point and the slope between them is 10 percent or less, are *Type B units* or FHA Type
5410 C units; and
5411
- 5412 4. Units served by an elevator in accordance with Section 1108.7.3 are *Type B units* or
5413 FHA Type-C units.
5414

5415 **1108.7.5 Design flood elevation.** The required number of *Type A units*, [~~and~~] *Type B units* or
5416 FHA Type-C units shall not apply to a *site* where the required elevation of the lowest floor or
5417 the lowest horizontal structural building members of nonelevator buildings are at or above the
5418 *design flood elevation* resulting in:
5419

- 5420 1. A difference in elevation between the minimum required floor elevation at the primary
5421 entrances and vehicular and pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240 mm)
5422 exceeding 30 inches (762 mm), and
5423
- 5424 2. A slope exceeding 10 percent between the minimum required floor elevation at the
5425 primary entrances and vehicular and pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240
5426 mm).

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5427 Where no such arrival points are within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the primary entrances,
5428 the closest arrival points shall be used.

5429

5430 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

5431 **118. Subsection 1110.1, “General,” of Section 1110, “Other Features and**
5432 **Facilities,” of Chapter 11, “Accessibility,” of the 2021 International Building Code is**
5433 **amended to read as follows:**

5434 **“1110.1 General.** *Accessible* building features and facilities shall be provided in accordance with
5435 Sections 1110.2 through 1110.15.

5436

5437 **Exceptions:**

5438

5439 1. *Accessible units, Type A units and Type B units* shall comply with Chapter 10 of ICC
5440 A117.1.

5441

5442 2. *FHA Type-C dwelling units* designed and constructed in accordance with the *Fair*
5443 *Housing Act Design Manual—1996(Updated 1998)* are considered in compliance with
5444 *these provisions.*”
5445

5446 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

5447 **119. Paragraph 1110.2.1, “Family or Assisted-Use Toilet and Bathing Rooms,” of**
5448 **Subsection 1110.2, “Toilet and Bathing Facilities,” of Section 1110, “Other Features and**
5449 **Facilities,” of Chapter 11, “Accessibility,” of the 2021 International Building Code is**
5450 **amended to read as follows:**

5451 **“1110.2.1 Family or assisted-use toilet and bathing rooms.** In assembly and mercantile
5452 occupancies, an *accessible* family or assisted-use toilet room shall be provided where an
5453 aggregate of six or more male or [~~and~~] female water closets are provided [~~is required~~]. In
5454 buildings of mixed occupancy, only those water closets required for the assembly or mercantile
5455 occupancy shall be used to determine the family or assisted-use toilet room requirement. In
5456 recreational facilities where separate-sex bathing rooms are provided, an *accessible* family or
5457 assisted-use bathing room shall be provided. Fixtures located within family or assisted-use
5458 toilet and bathing rooms shall be included in determining the number of fixtures provided in
5459 an occupancy.

5460

5461 **Exception:** Where each separate-sex bathing room has only one shower or bathtub fixture,
5462 a family or assisted-use bathing room is not required.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5463 **1110.2.1.1 Standard.** Family or assisted-use toilet and bathing rooms shall comply with
5464 Sections 1110.2.1.2 through 1110.2.1.7.

5465
5466 **1110.2.1.2 Family or assisted-use toilet rooms.** Family or assisted-use toilet rooms shall
5467 include only one water closet and only one lavatory. A family or assisted-use bathing room
5468 in accordance with Section 1110.2.1.3 shall be considered a family or assisted-use toilet
5469 room.

5470
5471 **Exception:** The following additional fixtures shall be permitted in a family or assisted-
5472 use toilet room.

- 5473 1. A urinal.
5474 2. A child-height water closet.
5475 3. A child-height lavatory.

5476
5477 **1110.2.1.3 Family or assisted-use bathing rooms.** Family or assisted-use bathing rooms
5478 shall include only one shower or bathtub fixture. Family or assisted-use bathing rooms shall
5479 also include one water closet and one lavatory. Where storage facilities are provided for
5480 separate-sex bathing rooms, *accessible* storage facilities shall be provided for family or
5481 assisted-use bathing rooms.

5482
5483 **1110.2.1.4 Location.** Family or assisted-use toilet and bathing rooms shall be located on
5484 an *accessible route*. Family or assisted-use toilet rooms shall be located not more than one
5485 *story* above or below separate-sex toilet rooms. The *accessible route* from any separate-
5486 sex toilet room to a family or assisted-use toilet room shall not exceed 500 feet (152 m).

5487
5488 **1110.2.1.5 Prohibited location.** In passenger transportation facilities and airports, the
5489 *accessible route* from separate-sex toilet rooms to a family or assisted-use toilet room shall
5490 not pass-through security checkpoints.

5491
5492 **1110.2.1.7 Privacy.** Doors to family or assisted-use toilet and bathing rooms shall be
5493 securable from within the room and be provided with an “occupied” indicator.”

5494

5495 5499 **CHAPTER 12**
5496 5500 **INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT**

5497 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**
5498

5501 **120. Subsection 1202.1, “General,” of Section 1202, “Ventilation,” of Chapter 12,**
5502 **“Interior Environment,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as**
5503 **follows:**

5504 **“1202.1 General.** Buildings shall be provided with natural ventilation in accordance with Section
5505 1202.5, or mechanical ventilation in accordance with the *Dallas* [~~*International*~~] *Mechanical Code*.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5506 Where the air infiltration rate in a *dwelling unit* is [~~less than~~] 5 air changes or less per hour
5507 when tested with a blower door at a pressure 0.2 inch w.c. (50 Pa) in accordance with Section
5508 402.4.1.2 of the *Dallas* [~~International~~] *Energy Conservation Code—Residential Provisions*, the
5509 *dwelling unit* shall be ventilated by mechanical means in accordance with Section 403 of the *Dallas*
5510 [~~International~~] *Mechanical Code. Ambulatory care facilities* and Group I-2 occupancies shall be
5511 ventilated by mechanical means in accordance with Section 407 of the *Dallas* [~~International~~]
5512 *Mechanical Code.*”

5513

5514 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

5515 **121. Paragraph 1210.2.2, “Walls and Partitions,” of Subsection 1210.2, “Finish**
5516 **Materials,” of Section 1210, “Toilet and Bathroom Requirements,” of Chapter 12, “Interior**
5517 **Environment,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

5518 **“1210.2.2 Walls and partitions.** Walls and partitions within 2 feet (610 mm) of service sinks,
5519 urinals and water closets shall have a smooth, hard, nonabsorbent surface, to a height of not
5520 less than 4 feet (1219 mm) above the floor, and except for structural elements, the materials
5521 used in such walls shall be of a type that is not adversely affected by moisture.

5522

5523 **Exception:** This section does not apply to the following buildings and spaces:

5524

- 5525 1. Dwelling units and sleeping units.
- 5526
- 5527 2. Toilet rooms that are not accessible to the public and that have not more than one
- 5528 water closet provided that walls around urinals comply with the minimum
- 5529 surrounding material specified by Section 419.3 of the *Dallas Plumbing Code.*
- 5530

5531 Accessories such as grab bars, towel bars, paper dispensers and soap dishes, provided on
5532 or within walls, shall be installed and sealed to protect structural elements from moisture.”

5533

5534

5538 **CHAPTER 14**

5535

5539 **EXTERIOR WALLS**

5536 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

5537

5540 **122. Subsection 1404.5, “Wood Veneers,” of Section 1404, “Installation of Wall**
5541 **Coverings,” of Chapter 14, “Exterior Walls,” of the 2021 International Building Code is**
5542 **amended to read as follows:**

5543 **“1404.5 Wood veneers.** Wood veneers on exterior walls of buildings of Type I, II, III and IV
5544 construction shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm) nominal thickness, 0.438-inch (11.1 mm)
5545 exterior hardboard siding or 0.375-inch (9.5 mm) exterior-type wood structural panels or
5546 particleboard and shall conform to the following:

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 5547 1. The veneer shall not exceed 40 feet (12 190 mm) in height above grade. Where fire-
5548 retardant-treated wood is used, the height shall not exceed 60 feet (18 290 mm) in height
5549 above grade.
5550
- 5551 2. The veneer is attached to or furred from a noncombustible backing that is fire-resistance
5552 rated as required by other provisions of this code.
5553
- 5554 3. Where open or spaced wood veneers (without concealed spaces) are used, they shall not
5555 project more than 24 inches (610 mm) from the building wall.
5556

5557 See Sections 1405.2.1 and 1405.3 for additional limitations.”
5558

5559 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

5560 **123. Subparagraph 1405.1.1.1, “Ignition Resistance,” of Paragraph 1405.1.1,**
5561 **“Type I, II, III and IV Construction,” of Subsection 1405.1, “Combustible Exterior Wall**
5562 **Coverings,” of Section 1405, “Combustible Materials on the Exterior Side of Exterior**
5563 **Walls,” of Chapter 14, “Exterior Walls,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended**
5564 **to read as follows:**

5565 **“1405.1.1.1 Ignition resistance.** Where permitted by Section 1405.1.1, combustible
5566 exterior wall coverings shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 268.
5567

5568 **Exceptions:**

- 5569
- 5570 1. Wood or wood-based products installed at fully sprinklered exterior exitways,
5571 exterior stairs or exterior exit balconies of Group R occupancies.
5572
- 5573 2. Other combustible materials covered with an exterior weather covering, other
5574 than vinyl sidings, included in and complying with the thickness requirements
5575 of Table 1404.2.
5576
- 5577 3. Aluminum having a minimum thickness of 0.019 inch (0.48 mm).
5578
- 5579 4. Materials of a Class II flame spread classification may be substituted in lieu of
5580 testing in accordance with NFPA 268 for exterior wall coverings of wood or
5581 wood-based products and of Type V construction in Group R, Division 1, 2 and
5582 4 occupancies. The finish materials must be such that the required flame spread
5583 is an inherent characteristic of the material or is permanently achieved by
5584 pressure impregnation.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5585 **1405.1.1.1.1 Fire separation 5 feet or less.** Where installed on exterior walls having a
5586 fire separation distance of 5 feet (1524 mm) or less, combustible exterior wall coverings
5587 shall not exhibit sustained flaming as defined in NFPA 268.
5588

5589 **1405.1.1.1.2 Fire separation greater than 5 feet.** For fire separation distances greater
5590 than 5 feet (1524 mm), any exterior wall covering shall be permitted that has been
5591 exposed to a reduced level of incident radiant heat flux in accordance with the NFPA
5592 268 test method without exhibiting sustained flaming. The minimum fire separation
5593 distance required for the exterior wall covering shall be determined from Table
5594 1405.2.1.1.2 based on the maximum tolerable level of incident radiant heat flux that
5595 does not cause sustained flaming of the exterior wall covering.”
5596

CHAPTER 15

ROOF ASSEMBLIES AND ROOF STRUCTURES

Carryover Dallas Amendment

5600 **124. Table 1505.1, “Minimum Roof Covering Classification for Types of**
5601 **Construction,” of Subsection [BF] 1505.1, “General,” of Section 1505, “Fire Classification,”**
5602 **of Chapter 15, “Roof Assemblies and Rooftop Structures,” of the 2021 International Building**
5603 **Code is amended to read as follows:**
5604

5605 **“TABLE 1505.1^a[~~r~~-b]**

5606 **MINIMUM ROOF COVERING CLASSIFICATION FOR TYPES OF CONSTRUCTION**

IA	IB	IIA	IIB	IIIA	IIIB	IV	VA	VB
B	B	B	C ^b [c]	B	C ^b [c]	B	B	C ^b [c]

5608 For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m².

- 5609
- 5610 a. Unless otherwise required in accordance with the *International Wildland-Urban Interface Code* or due to the
 - 5611 location of the building within a fire district in accordance with Appendix D.
 - 5612 b. Nonclassified roof coverings shall be permitted on buildings of [~~Group R-3 and~~] Group U occupancies having
 - 5613 not more than 200 square feet of projected roof area. When exceeding 200 square feet of projected roof
 - 5614 area, buildings of Group U occupancies may use non-rated, non-combustible [~~where there is a minimum fire-~~
 - 5615 ~~separation distance of 6 feet measured from the leading edge of the~~] roof coverings.
 - 5616 [~~e. Buildings that are not more than two stories above grade plane and having not more than 6,000 square feet of~~
 - 5617 ~~projected roof area and where there is a minimum 10 foot fire separation distance from the leading edge of the~~
 - 5618 ~~roof to a lot line on all sides of the building, except for street fronts or public ways, shall be permitted to have~~
 - 5619 ~~roofs of No. 1 cedar or redwood shakes and No. 1 shingles constructed in accordance with Section 1505.7.]”~~
5620

5621 Carryover Dallas Amendment

5622 **125. Subsection [BF] 1505.7, “Special Purpose Roofs,” of Section 1505, “Fire**
5623 **Classification,” of Chapter 15, “Roof Assemblies and Rooftop Structures,” of the 2021**
5624 **International Building Code is deleted.**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5625 Carryover Dallas Amendment

5626 126. Paragraph [BG] 1511.2.4, “Type of Construction,” of Subsection [BG] 1510.2,
5627 “Penthouses,” of Section 1511, “Rooftop Structures,” of Chapter 15, “Roof Assemblies and
5628 Rooftop Structures,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:

5629 “[BG] 1511.2.4 Type of construction. Penthouses shall be constructed with walls, floors and
5630 roofs as required for the type of construction of the building on which such penthouses are
5631 built. All structures must be designed by an engineer registered in the State of Texas.
5632

5633 Exceptions:

- 5634
- 5635 1. On buildings of Type I construction, the exterior walls and roofs of penthouses with
5636 a *fire separation distance* greater than 5 feet (1524 mm) and less than 20 feet (6096
5637 mm) shall be permitted to have not less than a 1-hour fire-resistance rating. The
5638 exterior walls and roofs of penthouses with a fire separation distance of 20 feet
5639 (6096 mm) or greater shall not be required to have a fire-resistance rating.
5640
 - 5641 2. On buildings of Type I construction two stories or less in height above grade plane
5642 or of Type II construction, the exterior walls and roofs of penthouses with a *fire*
5643 *separation distance* greater than 5 feet (1524 mm) and less than 20 feet (6096 mm)
5644 shall be permitted to have not less than a 1-hour fire-resistance rating or a lesser
5645 fire-resistance rating as required by Table 705.5 and be constructed of fire-
5646 retardant-treated wood. The exterior walls and roofs of penthouses with a *fire*
5647 *separation distance* of 20 feet (6096 mm) or greater shall be permitted to be
5648 constructed of fire-retardant-treated wood and shall not be required to have a fire-
5649 resistance rating. Interior framing and walls shall be permitted to be constructed of
5650 fire-retardant-treated wood.
5651
 - 5652 3. On buildings of Type III, IV or V construction, the exterior walls of penthouses
5653 with a fire separation distance greater than 5 feet (1524 mm) and less than 20 feet
5654 (6096 mm) shall be permitted to have not less than a 1-hour fire-resistance rating
5655 or a lesser fire-resistance rating as required by Table 705.5. On buildings of Type
5656 III, IV or VA construction, the exterior walls of penthouses with a fire separation
5657 distance of 20 feet (6096 mm) or greater shall be permitted to be of heavy timber
5658 construction complying with section 602.4 and 2304.11 or noncombustible
5659 construction or fire-retardant-treated wood and shall not be required to have a fire-
5660 resistance rating.”
5661

5662 Carryover Dallas Amendment

5663 127. Subsection [BS] 1511.7, “Other Rooftop Structures,” of Section 1511,
5664 “Rooftop Structures,” of Chapter 15, “Roof Assemblies and Rooftop Structures,” of the 2021

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5665 International Building Code is amended by adding a **new** Paragraph 1511.7.6,
5666 “Architectural Appendages,” to read as follows:

5667 “1511.7.6 Architectural appendages. Architectural appendages used exclusively as
5668 decoration or embellishment must comply with Section 1511.2 as penthouses and be of the
5669 same type of construction as required for the exterior walls of the building or the roof in which
5670 such appendages are located.”
5671

5672 Carryover Dallas Amendment

5673 **128. Section 1511, “Rooftop Structures,” of Chapter 15, “Roof Assemblies and**
5674 **Rooftop Structures,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a **new****
5675 **Subsection 1511.9, “Wood Surfaces,” to read as follows:**

5677 “1511.9 Wood surfaces. Where roof assemblies are required to be fire rated, wood surfaces on
5678 roof assemblies such as walks, running tracks and other similar surfaces may be installed when
5679 constructed of fire-retardant treated wood. Any space between the wood and the roof surface must
5680 be filled with inorganic or Class I material or the space must be fire stopped not to exceed 8 feet
5681 (2438.4 mm) in any direction. Weep holes of sufficient size to prevent water accumulation on the
5682 roof are permitted.”
5683

5684 Carryover Dallas Amendment

5685 **129. Subsection 1512.1, “General,” of Section 1512, “Reroofing,” of Chapter 15,**
5686 **“Roof Assemblies and Rooftop Structures,” of the 2021 International Building Code is**
5687 **amended to read as follows:**

5688 “1512.1 General. Materials and methods of application used for recovering or replacing an
5689 existing roof covering shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 15. *All individual*
5690 *replacement shingles or shakes shall be in compliance with the rating required by Table 1505.1.*
5691

5692 Exceptions:

- 5693
- 5694 1. *Roof replacement or roof recover* of existing low-slope roof coverings shall not be
5695 required to meet the minimum design slope requirement of one-quarter unit vertical in
5696 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) in Section 1507 for roofs that provide *positive roof*
5697 *drainage*.
 - 5698 2. Recovering or replacing an existing *roof covering* shall not be required to meet the
5699 requirement for secondary (emergency overflow) drains or *scuppers* in Section 1502.2
5700 for roofs that provide for *positive roof drainage*. For the purposes of this exception,
5701 existing secondary drainage or *scupper* systems required in accordance with this code
5702

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5703 shall not be removed unless they are replaced by secondary drains or *scuppers* designed
5704 and installed in accordance with Section 1502.2.”

5705

5706 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

5707 **130. Paragraph 1512.2.1, “Roof Recover,” of Subsection 1512.2, “Roof**

5708 **Replacement,” of Section 1512, “Reroofing,” of Chapter 15, “Roof Assemblies and Rooftop**

5709 **Structures,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

5710 **“1512.2.1 Roof recover.** The installation of a new roof covering over an existing roof covering
5711 shall be permitted where any of the following conditions occur:

5712

5713 1. Where the new roof covering is installed in accordance with the roof covering
5714 manufacturer’s approved instructions.

5715

5716 2. Complete and separate roofing systems, such as standing-seam *metal roof panel*
5717 systems, that are designed to transmit the roof *loads* directly to the building’s structural
5718 system and that do not rely on existing roofs and roof coverings for support, shall not
5719 require the removal of existing roof coverings.

5720

5721 3. Metal panel, metal shingle and concrete and clay tile roof coverings shall be permitted
5722 to be installed over existing wood shake roofs when applied in accordance with Section
5723 1512.3.

5724

5725 4. The application of a new protective roof coating over an existing protective roof
5726 coating, *metal roof panel*, built-up roof, spray polyurethane foam roofing system, *metal*
5727 *roof shingles*, mineral-surfaced roll roofing, modified bitumen roofing or thermoset and
5728 thermoplastic single-ply roofing shall be permitted without tear off of existing roof
5729 coverings.

5730

5731 5. Where the maximum number of roof coverings, including the new roof covering
5732 installation, does not exceed two.

5733

5734 **1512.2.1.1 Exceptions.** A *roof recover* shall not be permitted where any of the following
5735 conditions occur:

5736

5737 1. Where the existing roof or *roof covering* is water soaked or has deteriorated to the
5738 point that the existing roof or *roof covering* is not adequate as a base for additional
5739 roofing.

5740

5741 2. Where the existing *roof covering* is slate, clay, cement or asbestos-cement tile.

5742

5743 3. Where the existing roof has two or more applications of any type *of roof covering.*”

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5744 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

5745 **131. Subsection 1612.1, “General,” of Section 1612, “Flood Loads,” of Chapter 16,**

5746 **“Structural Design,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

5747 **“1612.1 General.** Within *flood hazard areas* as established in Section 1612.3, all new construction
5748 of buildings, structures and portions of buildings and structures, including substantial improvement
5749 and restoration of substantial damage to buildings and structures, shall be designed and constructed
5750 to resist the effects of flood hazards and flood loads. For buildings that are located in more than one
5751 *flood hazard area*, the provisions associated with the most restrictive *flood hazard area* shall apply.

5752
5753 **Exception:** Buildings and structures constructed and elevated as required by floodplain
5754 regulations in Article V of the *Dallas Development Code*.”
5755

5756 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

5757 **132. Subsection 1704.2, “Special Inspections and Tests,” of Section 1704, “Special**

5758 **Inspections and Tests, Contractor Responsibility and Structural Observation,” of Chapter**

5759 **17, “Special Inspections and Tests,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to**

5760 **read as follows:**

5761 **“1704.2 Special inspections and tests.** Where application is made to the *building official* for
5762 construction as specified in Section 301 of Chapter 52, “Administrative Provisions for the
5763 Construction Codes” of the *Dallas City Code* [~~405~~], the owner or the owner’s authorized agent, or
5764 the registered design professional in responsible charge, other than the contractor, shall employ one
5765 or more *approved agencies* to provide *special inspections* and tests during construction on the types
5766 of work listed under Section 1705 and identify the *approved agencies* to the *building official*. The
5767 special inspector shall not be employed by the contractor. These *special inspections* and tests are
5768 in addition to the inspections identified by the *building official* that are identified in Section 304
5769 of Chapter 52, “Administrative Provisions for the Construction Codes” of the *Dallas City Code*
5770 [~~440~~].
5771

5772 **Exceptions:**

- 5773
- 5774 1. *Special inspections* and tests are not required for construction of a minor nature or as
5775 warranted by conditions in the jurisdiction as *approved* by the *building official*.
 - 5776
 - 5777 2. Unless otherwise required by the *building official*, *special inspections* and tests are not
5778 required for Group U occupancies that are accessory to a residential occupancy
5779 including, but not limited to, those listed in Section 312.1.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 5780 3. *Special inspections* and tests are not required for portions of structures designed and
5781 constructed in accordance with the cold-formed steel light-frame construction
5782 provisions of Section 2211.1.2 or the conventional light-frame construction provisions
5783 of Section 2308.
5784
- 5785 4. The contractor is permitted to employ the *approved agencies* where the contractor is
5786 also the owner.
5787

5788 **1704.2.1 Special inspector qualifications.** Prior to the start of the construction or upon
5789 request, the *approved agencies* shall provide written documentation to the registered design
5790 professional in responsible charge and the building official demonstrating the competence and
5791 relevant experience or training of the *special inspectors* who will perform the *special*
5792 *inspections* and tests during construction. Experience or training shall be considered relevant
5793 where the documented experience or training is related in complexity to the same type of
5794 *special inspection* or testing activities for projects of similar complexity and material qualities.
5795 These qualifications are in addition to qualifications specified in other sections of this code.
5796

5797 The *registered design professional in responsible charge* and engineers of record involved
5798 in the design of the project are permitted to act as the *approved agency* and their personnel are
5799 permitted to act as special inspectors for the work designed by them, provided they qualify as
5800 special inspectors.
5801

5802 **1704.2.2 Access for special inspection.** The construction or work for which *special inspection*
5803 or testing is required shall remain accessible and exposed for *special inspection* or testing
5804 purposes until completion of the required *special inspections* or tests.
5805

5806 **1704.2.3 Statement of special inspections.** The applicant shall submit a statement of *special*
5807 *inspections* in accordance with Section 301.4.7 of Chapter 52, “Administrative Procedures for
5808 the Construction Codes,” of the *Dallas City Code* [107.1] as a condition for permit issuance.
5809 This statement shall be in accordance with Section 1704.3.
5810

5811 **Exception:** A statement of *special inspections* is not required for portions of structures
5812 designed and constructed in accordance with the cold-formed steel light-frame construction
5813 provisions of Section 2211.1.2 or the conventional light-frame construction provisions of
5814 Section 2308.
5815

5816 **1704.2.4 Report requirement.** *Approved agencies* shall keep records of special inspections
5817 and tests. The *approved agency* shall submit reports of *special inspections* and tests to the
5818 *building official* upon request and to the *registered design professional in responsible charge*.
5819 Individual inspection r[~~R~~] reports shall indicate that work inspected or tested was or was not
5820 completed in conformance to *approved construction documents*. Discrepancies shall be
5821 brought to the immediate attention of the contractor for correction. If they are not corrected,
5822 the discrepancies shall be brought to the attention of the *building official* and to the *registered*
5823 *design professional in responsible charge* prior to the completion of that phase of the work. A
5824 final report documenting required *special inspections* and tests, and correction of any

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5825 discrepancies noted in the inspections or tests, shall be submitted at a point in time agreed upon
5826 prior to the start of work by the owner or the owner’s authorized agent to the *building official*.
5827

5828 **1704.2.5 Special inspection of fabricated items.** Where fabrication of structural, load-bearing
5829 or lateral load-resisting members or assemblies is being conducted on the premises of a
5830 fabricator’s shop, *special inspections* of the *fabricated items* shall be performed during
5831 fabrication, except where the fabricator has been approved to perform work without special
5832 inspections in accordance with Section 1704.2.5.1.
5833

5834 **1704.2.5.1 Fabricator approval.** *Special inspections* during fabrications required by
5835 Section 1704 are not required where the work is done on the premises of a fabricator
5836 approved to perform such work without *special inspection*. Approval shall be based on
5837 review of the fabricator's written procedural and quality control manuals and workmanship,
5838 with periodic auditing of fabrication practices by an approved agency, or a fabricator that
5839 is enrolled in a nationally accepted inspections program or the *building official*. At
5840 completion of fabrication, the acceptable or approved fabricator shall submit a *certificate*
5841 *of compliance* to the owner or the owner’s authorized agent or the registered design
5842 professional in responsible charge, [for submittal to the building official as specified in
5843 Section 1704.5.] stating that the work was performed in accordance with the *approved*
5844 *construction documents*. The certificate of compliance shall also be made available to the
5845 building official upon request.
5846

5847 **New Dallas Amendment**

5848 133. **Section 1705.1.1, “Special Cases,” of Section 1705, “Required Special**
5849 **Inspections and Tests,” of Chapter 17, “Special Inspections and Tests,” of the 2021**

5850 **International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

5851 **“1705.1.1 Special cases.** Special inspections and tests shall be required for proposed work that
5852 is, in the opinion of the building official, unusual in its nature or to satisfactorily administer other
5853 provisions of the codes, such as, but not limited to, the following examples:
5854

- 5855 1. Construction materials and systems that are alternatives to materials and systems
5856 prescribed by this code.
5857
- 5858 2. Unusual design applications of materials described in this code.
5859
- 5860 3. Materials and systems required to be installed in accordance with additional
5861 manufacturer’s instructions that prescribe requirements not contained in this code or in
5862 standards referenced by this code.
5863
- 5864 4. Work designated for special inspections as specified in Section 304 of Chapter 52,
5865 “Administrative Procedures for the Construction Codes,” of the Dallas City Code.”

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5866 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

5867 134. Section 1705, “Required Special Inspections and Tests,” of Chapter 17,
5868 “Special Inspections and Tests,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended by
5869 adding a **new** Subsection 1705.21, “Special Inspections for Dallas Energy Conservation Code
5870 Compliance,” to read as follows:

5871 **“1705.21 Special inspections for Dallas Energy Conservation Code compliance. *Special***
5872 ***inspections* are required to verify compliance with the *Dallas Energy Conservation Code* in**
5873 **accordance with Section 1705.21.1 and 1705.21.2.**
5874

5875 **1705.21.1 Scope of inspection and testing.** The scope of the test is as follows:
5876

- 5877 1. Building envelope.
- 5878
- 5879 2. Building mechanical system including air leakage testing and duct leakage testing, as
5880 applicable.
- 5881
- 5882 3. Service water heating.
- 5883
- 5884 4. Electric lighting and power system.
- 5885

5886 **1705.21.2 Qualifications.** Special inspectors for *Dallas Energy Conservation Code*
5887 *inspections* shall have a current International Code Council certification in the relevant energy
5888 code inspection specialty as required by the state of Texas.”
5889

5890 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

5891 135. Section 1705, “Required Special Inspections and Tests,” of Chapter 17,
5892 “Special Inspections and Tests,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended by
5893 adding a **new** Subsection 1705.22, “Special Inspections for Dallas Green Code Construction
5894 Code Compliance,” to read as follows:

5895 **“1705.22 Special inspections for Dallas Green Construction Code compliance. *Special***
5896 ***inspections* are required to verify compliance with the *Dallas Green Construction Code* in**
5897 **accordance with Sections 1705.22.1 and 1705.22.2.**
5898

5899 **1705.22.1 Scope of inspection and testing.**

5901 **1705.22.1.1 Single-family or duplex structures.** The scope of work required is stipulated
5902 in the *Dallas Green Construction Code*.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5903 **1705.22.1.2 Commercial structures.** The scope of work required is stipulated in the
5904 *Dallas Green Construction Code.*
5905

5906 **1705.22.2 Qualifications.** Special inspectors for *Dallas Green Construction Code* inspections
5907 shall be qualified as stipulated by the building official.”
5908

5909 **New COG Amendment**

5910 136. Subsection 1809.5, “Frost protection,” of Section 1809, “Shallow
5911 Foundations,” of Chapter 18, “Soils and Foundations,” of the 2021 International Building
5912 Code is amended to read as follows:

5913 **“1809.5 Frost protection.** Except where otherwise protected from frost, foundations and other
5914 permanent supports of buildings and structures shall be protected from frost by one or more of
5915 the following methods:

- 5916 1. Extending below the frost line of the locality.
- 5917 2. Constructing in accordance with ASCE 32.
- 5918 3. Erecting on solid rock.

5919
5920 **Exception:** Free-standing buildings meeting all of the following conditions shall not be
5921 required to be protected:

- 5922 1. Assigned to *Risk Category I*.
- 5923 2. Area of 600 square feet (56 m²) or less for *light-frame construction* or 400 square feet
5924 (37 m²) or less for other than *light-frame construction*.
- 5925 3. Eave height of 10 feet (3048 mm) or less.

5926 *Shallow foundations* shall not bear on frozen soil unless such frozen condition is of a
5927 permanent character.
5928

5929 ~~**1809.5.1 Frost protection at required exits.** Frost protection shall be provided at exterior
5930 landings for all required exits with outward swinging doors. Frost protection shall only be
5931 required to the extent necessary to ensure the unobstructed opening of the required *exit* doors.”~~
5932

5933 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

5934 137. Subsection 2503.1, “Inspection,” of Section 2503, “Inspection,” of Chapter 25,
5935 “Gypsum Board, Gypsum Panel Products and Plaster,” of the 2021 International Building
5936 Code is amended to read as follows:

5937 **“2503.1 Inspection.** Lath, gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall be inspected in
5938 accordance with Chapter 52, “Administrative Procedures for the Construction Codes,” of the
5939 *Dallas City Code* [Section 110.3.5].”

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5940 **New COG Amendment**

5941 138. **Section 2702, “Emergency and Standby Power Systems,” of Chapter 27,**
5942 **“Electrical,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new Subsection**
5943 **2702.5, “Designated Critical Operations Areas (DCOA),” to read as follows:**

5944 **Section 2702.5 Designated Critical Operations Areas (DCOA):** In areas within a facility or
5945 site requiring continuous operation for the purpose of public safety, emergency management,
5946 national security or business continuity, the power systems shall comply with NFPA 70 Article
5947 708.
5948

5949 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

5950 139. **Subsection [P] 2901.1, “Scope,” of Section 2901, “General,” of Chapter 29,**
5951 **“Plumbing Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

5952 **“[P] 2901.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter and the *Dallas* [~~*International*~~] *Plumbing Code*
5953 shall govern the design, construction, erection, installation of plumbing components, appliance,
5954 equipment and systems used in *buildings* and structures covered by this code. Toilet and bathing
5955 rooms shall be constructed in accordance with Section 1209. Private sewage disposal systems shall
5956 conform to the *Dallas Plumbing* [~~*International Private Sewage Disposal*~~] *Code*. The *Dallas*
5957 [~~*International*~~] *Fire Code*, [the ~~*International Private Sewage Disposal Code*~~] and the *Dallas*
5958 [~~*International*~~] *Plumbing Code* shall govern the use and maintenance of plumbing components,
5959 appliances, equipment and systems. The *Dallas* [~~*International*~~] *Existing Building Code* and the
5960 *Dallas* [~~*International*~~] *Plumbing Code* shall govern the *alteration, repair, relocation, replacement*
5961 and *addition* of plumbing components, *appliances, equipment, and systems*. The provisions of this
5962 chapter are meant to work in coordination with the provisions of Chapter 4 of the *Dallas Plumbing*
5963 *Code*. Should any conflicts arise between the two chapters, the building official shall determine
5964 which provision applies.”
5965

5966 **Carryover Dallas/COG Amendment**

5967 140. **Subsection [P] 2902.1, “Minimum Number of Fixtures,” of Section 2902,**
5968 **“Minimum Plumbing Facilities,” of Chapter 29, “Plumbing Systems,” of the 2021**
5969 **International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

5970 **“[P] 2902.1 Minimum number of fixtures.** Plumbing fixtures shall be provided in the minimum
5971 number in accordance with this section and as shown in Table 2902.1 based on the actual use of
5972 the building or space. Uses not shown in Table 2902.1 shall be considered individually by the code
5973 official. The number of occupants shall be determined by this code.

5974
5975 1. Assembly occupancies: At least one drinking fountain must be provided at each floor level
5976 in an approved location.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5977 **Exception:** A drinking fountain need not be provided in a drinking or dining establishment.
5978

5979 2. Groups A, B, F, I, M and S occupancies: Buildings, floors, tenant spaces or portions thereof
5980 where persons are employed must be provided with at least one water closet for each sex
5981 except as provided in Section 2902.2. Such water closet rooms in connection with food
5982 establishments where food is prepared, stored or served must have hand washing facilities
5983 therein or adjacent thereto. At least one drinking fountain must be provided at each floor
5984 level in an approved location.
5985

5986 3. Group E and R occupancies must be provided with fixtures as shown in Table 2902.1.
5987

5988 It is recommended, but not required, that the minimum number of fixtures provided also
5989 comply with the number shown in Table 2902.1. Types of occupancies not shown in Table 2902.1
5990 shall be considered individually by the building official. The number of occupants shall be
5991 determined by this code. Occupancy classification shall be determined in accordance with Chapter
5992 3.
5993

5994 **[P] 2902.1.1 Fixture calculations.** To determine the *occupant load* of each sex, the total
5995 *occupant load* shall be divided in half. To determine the required number of fixtures, the fixture
5996 ratio or ratios for each fixture type shall be applied to the *occupant load* of each sex in
5997 accordance with Table 2902.1. Fractional numbers resulting from applying the fixture ratios
5998 of Table 2902.1 shall be rounded up to the next whole number. For calculations involving
5999 multiple occupancies, such fractional numbers for each occupancy shall first be summed and
6000 then rounded up to the next whole number.

6001
6002 **Exceptions:**

- 6003
- 6004 1. The total *occupant load* shall not be required to be divided in half where *approved*
 - 6005 statistical data indicate a distribution of the sexes of other than 50 percent of each sex.
 - 6006 2. Where multiple-user facilities are designed to serve all genders, the minimum fixture
 - 6007 count shall be calculated 100 percent, based on total *occupant load*. In such multiple-
 - 6008 user facilities, each fixture type shall be in accordance with ICC A117.1 and each urinal
 - 6009 that is provided shall be located in a stall.
 - 6010 3. Distribution of the sexes is not required where single-user water closets and bathing
 - 6011 room fixtures are provided in accordance with Section 2902.1.2.
 - 6012

6013 **2902.1.1.1 Occupant load for minimum plumbing facilities.** In determining minimum
6014 plumbing facilities, the number of occupants for whom minimum plumbing facilities are
6015 provided must be computed in accordance with Section 1004.
6016

6017 **Exception:** Where state law or city ordinance limits the number of students per
6018 classroom, fixtures in primary and secondary schools may be provided on the basis of
6019 the maximum number of students allowed.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6020 [P] **2902.1.2 Single-user toilet and bathing room fixtures.** The plumbing fixtures located in
6021 single-user toilet and bathing rooms, including family or assisted-use toilet and bathing rooms
6022 that are required by Section 1110.2.1, shall contribute toward the total number of required
6023 plumbing fixtures for a building or tenant space. Single-user toilet and bathing rooms, and
6024 family or assisted-use toilet rooms and bathing rooms shall be identified as being available for
6025 use by all persons regardless of their sex.

6026 The total number of fixtures shall be permitted to be based on the required number of separate
6027 facilities or based on the aggregate of any combination of single-user or separate facilities.
6028

6029 [P] **2902.1.3 Lavatory distribution.** Where two or more toilet rooms are provided for each
6030 sex, the required number of lavatories shall be distributed proportionately to the required
6031 number of water closets.

6032 **Carryover COG Amendment**

6033 **2902.1.4 Additional fixtures for food preparation facilities.** In addition to the fixtures
6034 required in this chapter, all food service facilities must be provided with additional fixtures as
6035 required in this section.
6036

6037
6038 **2902.1.4.1 Hand washing lavatory.** At least one hand washing lavatory must be provided
6039 for use by employees that is accessible from food preparation, food dispensing and ware
6040 washing areas. Additional hand washing lavatories may be required based on convenience
6041 of use by employees.
6042

6043 **2902.1.4.2 Service sinks and floor sinks.** In new or remodeled food service
6044 establishments, at least one service sink or one floor sink must be provided so that it is
6045 conveniently located for the cleaning of mops or similar wet floor cleaning tools and for
6046 the disposal of mop water and similar liquid waste. The location of the service sinks or
6047 mop sinks must be approved by the health department.”
6048

6049 **New Dallas Amendment**

6050 141. Subsection [P] 2902.2, “Separate Facilities,” of Section 2902, “Minimum
6051 Plumbing Facilities,” of Chapter 29, “Plumbing Systems,” of the 2021 International Building

6052 **Code is amended to read as follows:**

6053 [P] **2902.2 Separate facilities.** Where plumbing fixtures are required, separate facilities shall be
6054 provided for each sex.

6055 **Exceptions:**

6056 1. Separate facilities shall not be required for *dwelling units* and *sleeping units*.
6057

6058 2. Separate facilities shall not be required in structures or tenant spaces with a total *occupant load*,
6059 including both employees and customers, of 15 or fewer where the structure or tenant space
6060

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6062 is deemed to be equivalent to a building occupied by a single tenant and approved by the
6063 building official.
6064

6065 3. Separate facilities shall not be required in mercantile occupancies in which the
6066 maximum *occupant load* is 100 or fewer.

6067
6068 4. Separate facilities shall not be required in business occupancies in which the
6069 maximum *occupant load* is 25 or fewer.

6070
6071 5. Separate facilities shall not be required to be designated by sex where single-user toilets rooms
6072 are provided in accordance with Section 2902.1.2.
6073

6074 **Option A with new definition, Privacy area.**

6075 6. Separate facilities shall not be required where rooms having both water closets and lavatory
6076 fixtures are designed for use by both sexes and a privacy area for water closets are installed in
6077 accordance with Section 405.3.4 of the Dallas [International] Plumbing Code. Urinals shall be
6078 located in an area visually separated from the remainder of the facility or each urinal that is
6079 provided shall be located in a stall.

6080

6081 **Option B Delete and reserve for further study.**

6082 ~~6. Separate facilities shall not be required where rooms having both water closets and lavatory~~
6083 ~~fixtures are designed for use by both sexes and privacy for water closets are installed in~~
6084 ~~accordance with Section 405.3.4 of the International Plumbing Code. Urinals shall be located in~~
6085 ~~an area visually separated from the remainder of the facility or each urinal that is provided shall~~
6086 ~~be located in a stall.~~
6087

6088 **New Dallas amendment – similar to COG proposed Amendment**

6089 142. Subsection 2902.6 “Small Occupancies,” of Section 2902, “Minimum
6090 Plumbing Facilities,” of Chapter 29, “Plumbing Systems,” of the 2021 International Building

6091 Code is amended to read as follows:

6092 “[P] 2902.6 Small occupancies. Drinking fountains shall not be required for a building
6093 occupied by a single tenant of M occupancy with an *occupant load* of [45] 100 or fewer, or a
6094 Group B Occupancy with an occupant load of 25 or fewer. This provision may be applied to
6095 other locations of Group M and Group occupancies if deemed to be equivalent to a building
6096 occupied by a single tenant and approved by the building official.”
6097

6098 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

6099 143. Section 2902, “Minimum Plumbing Facilities,” of Chapter 29, “Plumbing
6100
6101 Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new Subsection

6102 **2902.8, “Finish Material,” to read as follows:**
6103

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6104 “2902.8 Finish material. Finish materials must comply with Section 1210.”
6105

6106 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

6107 **144. Subsection 3001.3, “Referenced Standards,” of Section 3001, “General,” of**
6108 **Chapter 30, “Elevators and Conveying Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is**
6109 **amended to read as follows:**

6110 **“3001.3 Referenced standards.** Except as otherwise provided for in this code, the design,
6111 construction, installation, *alteration*, repair and maintenance of elevators and conveying systems
6112 and their components shall conform to applicable standard specified in Table 3001.3 and ASCE
6113 24 for construction in *flood hazard areas* established in Section 1612.3.

6114 **Exception:** The appendices of ASME A17.1—2013 do not apply. The building owner is
6115 responsible for the safe operation and maintenance of each elevator, dumbwaiter, escalator or
6116 moving walk installation and shall cause periodic inspections, tests and maintenance to be
6117 made of such conveyances.”
6118
6119

6120 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

6121 **145. Subsection 3001.4, “Accessibility,” of Section 3001, “General,” of Chapter 30,**
6122 **“Elevators and Conveying Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to**
6123 **read as follows:**

6124 **“3001.4 Accessibility.** Passenger elevators required to be accessible or to serve as part of an
6125 *accessible means of egress* shall comply with Sections 1009 and 1109.8.

6126 **Exception:** Passenger elevators regulated under Article 9102, “Architectural Barriers,” of
6127 *Vernon’s Texas Civil Statutes* and the “Texas Accessibility Standards of the Architectural
6128 Barriers Act,” adopted by the Texas Commission of Licensing and Regulation pursuant to
6129 Article 9102 and built in accordance with state certified plans, including any variances granted
6130 by the state, will be deemed in compliance with the requirements of this chapter.”
6131
6132

6133 **Carryover COG Amendment**

6134 **146. Section 3002.1, “Hoistway Enclosure Protection,” of Section 3002, “Hoistway**
6135 **Enclosures,” of Chapter 30, “Elevators and Conveying Systems,” of the 2021 International**
6136 **Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

6137 **“3002.1 Hoistway enclosure protection.** Elevator, dumbwaiter and other hoistway enclosures
6138 shall be *shaft enclosures* complying with Sections 712 and 713.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6139
6140

Exceptions:

6141 1. Elevators wholly located within atriums complying with Section 404 shall not require
6142 hoistway enclosure protection.
6143

6144 2. Elevators in open or enclosed parking garages that serve only the parking garage, and
6145 complying with Sections 406.5 and 406.6, respectively, shall not require hoistway
6146 enclosure protection.
6147

6148 **3002.1.1 Opening protectives.** Openings in hoistway enclosures shall be protected as required
6149 in Chapter 7.

6150
6151 **Exception:** The elevator car doors and the associated hoistway enclosure doors at the floor
6152 level designated for recall in accordance with Section 3003.2 shall be permitted to remain
6153 open during Phase I Emergency Recall Operation.
6154

6155 **3002.1.2 Hardware.** Hardware on opening protectives shall be of an *approved* type installed
6156 as tested, except that *approved* interlocks, mechanical locks and electric contacts, door and
6157 gate electric contacts and door-operating mechanisms shall be exempt from the fire test
6158 requirements.”
6159

6160 **Carryover COG and Dallas Amendments**

6161 **147. Subsection 3005.4, “Machine Rooms, Control Rooms, Machinery Spaces, and**

6162 **Control Spaces,” of Section 3005, “Machine Rooms,” of Chapter 30, “Elevators and**

6163 **Conveying Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

6164 **“3005.4 Machine rooms, control rooms, machinery spaces, and control spaces.** The following
6165 room and spaces shall be enclosed with *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707
6166 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both:

- 6167 1. Machine rooms
6168 2. Control Rooms
6169 3. Control Spaces
6170 4. Machinery spaces outside of the hoistway enclosure
6171

6172 The *fire-resistance rating* shall be not less than the required rating of the hoistway
6173 enclosure served by the machinery. Openings in the *fire barriers* shall be protected with
6174 assemblies having a *fire protection rating* not less than that required for the hoistway
6175 enclosure doors.
6176

6177 **Exceptions:**

- 6178
6179 1. For other than fire service access elevators and occupant evacuation elevators, where
6180 machine rooms, machinery spaces, control rooms and control spaces do not abut and

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 6181 have no openings to the hoistway enclosure they serve, the *fire barriers* constructed in
6182 accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with
6183 Section 711, or both, shall be permitted to be reduced to a 1-hour *fire-resistance* rating.
6184
- 6185 2. For other than fire service access elevators and occupant evacuation elevators, in
6186 buildings four *stories* or less above *grade plane* where machine room, machinery
6187 spaces, control rooms and control spaces do not abut and have no openings to the
6188 hoistway enclosure they serve, the machine room, machinery spaces, control rooms and
6189 control spaces are not required to be fire-resistance rated although the physical
6190 separation must be maintained from the rest of the building.
6191
- 6192 3. Elevator machine rooms, control rooms, machinery spaces and control spaces completely
6193 located within atriums shall not require enclosure protection.
6194
- 6195 4. 2. Elevator machine rooms, control rooms, machinery spaces and control spaces in open or
6196 enclosed parking garages that serve only the parking garage, shall not require enclosure
6197 protection.
6198
- 6199 5. Self-contained elevator and control systems as approved by the *building official*.

Carryover COG and Dallas Amendments

6200
6201
6202 **148. Section 3005, “Machine Rooms,” of Chapter 30, “Elevators and Conveying**
6203
6204 **Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a **new** Subsection**
6205 **3005.5, “Fire Protection in Machine Rooms, Control Rooms, Machinery Spaces and Control**
6206 **Spaces,” to read as follows:**

6207 **“3005.5.1 Fire protection in machine rooms, control rooms, machinery spaces and control**
6208 **spaces.**
6209

6210 **3005.5.1.1 Automatic sprinkler system.** The building shall be equipped throughout with an
6211 automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, except as otherwise
6212 permitted by Section 903.3.1.1.1 and as prohibited by Section 3005.7.2.1.
6213

6214 **3005.5.1.1.1 Prohibited locations.** Automatic sprinklers shall not be installed in machine
6215 rooms, elevator machinery spaces, control rooms, control spaces and elevator hoistways.
6216

6217 **Exception:** Sprinklers may be installed at the bottom of the pit as required in ASME
6218 A17.1 and installed in accordance with NFPA 13.
6219

6220 **3005.5.1.1.2 Sprinkler system monitoring.** The sprinkler system shall have a sprinkler
6221 control valve supervisory switch and water-flow initiating device provided for each floor
6222 that is monitored by the building’s fire alarm system.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6223 **3005.5.1.2 Water protection.** An approved method to prevent water from infiltrating into the
6224 hoistway enclosure from the operation of the automatic sprinkler system outside the elevator
6225 lobby shall be provided.
6226

6227 **3005.5.1.3 Shunt trip.** Means for elevator shutdown in accordance with Section 3005.5 shall
6228 not be installed.
6229

6230 **3005.5.1.4 Detection.** The elevator machine room, machine room, machinery space, control
6231 room, control space or hoistway of traction elevators must be protected by smoke detectors or
6232 other automatic fire detection installed in accordance with NFPA 72.”
6233

6234 **Carryover COG Amendment**

6235 **149. Section 3005, “Machine Rooms,” of Chapter 30, “Elevators and Conveying**
6236 **Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new Subsection**
6237 **3005.7 “Storage,” to read as follows:**
6238

6239 **“3005.7 Storage.** Storage shall not be allowed within the elevator machine room, control room,
6240 machinery spaces and/or control spaces and shall provide approved signage at each entry to the
6241 above listed locations stating: “No Storage Allowed.”
6242

6243 **Carryover COG Amendment**

6244 **150. Subsection 3006.2, “Hoistway Opening Protection Required,” of Section 3006,**
6245 **“Elevator Lobbies and Hoistway Opening Protection,” of Chapter 30, “Elevators and**
6246 **Conveying Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

6247 **“3006.2 Hoistway opening protection required.** Elevator hoistway door openings shall be
6248 protected in accordance with Section 3006.3 where an elevator hoistway connects more than three
6249 stories, is required to be enclosed within a shaft enclosure in accordance with Section 712.1.1 and
6250 any of the following conditions apply:

- 6251
- 6252 1. The building is not protected throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance
6253 with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.
 - 6254
 - 6255 2. The building contains a Group I-1 Condition 2 occupancy.
 - 6256
 - 6257 3. The building contains a Group I-2 occupancy.
 - 6258
 - 6259 4. The building contains a Group I-3 occupancy.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6260 5. The building is a high rise and the elevator hoistway is more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) in
6261 height. The height of the hoistway shall be measured from the lowest floor at or below
6262 grade to the highest floor at or above grade of the floors served by the hoistway.
6263

6264 **Exceptions:**

- 6265
- 6266 1. Protection of elevator hoistway door openings is not required where the elevator serves
6267 only open parking garages in accordance with Section 406.5.
 - 6268 2. Protection of elevator hoistway door openings is not required at the level(s) of exit
6269 discharge, provided the level(s) of exit discharge is equipped with an *automatic*
6270 *sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
 - 6271 3. Enclosed elevator lobbies and protection of elevator hoistway door openings are not
6272 required on levels where the elevator hoistway opens to the exterior.”
6273
6274
6275

6276 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

6277 **151. Subsection 3007.1, “General,” of Section 3007, “Fire Service Access Elevator,”**
6278 **of Chapter 30, “Elevators and Conveying Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code**
6279 **is amended to read as follows:**

6280 **“3007.1 General.** Where required by Section 403.6.1, every floor of the building shall be served
6281 by fire service access elevators complying with Sections 3007.1 through 3007.9. Except as
6282 modified in this section, fire service access elevators shall be installed in accordance with this
6283 chapter and ASME A17.1/CSA B44. A fire service access elevator must be one that is accessible
6284 for general public use. This requirement may be satisfied by an elevator for freight, service or
6285 passengers which also meets this condition.”
6286

6287 **New COG Amendment**

6288 **152. Subsection 3007.3, “Water Protection,” of Section 3007, “Fire Service Access**
6289 **Elevator,” of Chapter 30, “Elevators and Conveying Systems,” of the 2021 International**
6290 **Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

6291 **“3007.3 Water Protection.** Water from the operation of an *automatic sprinkler system* outside
6292 the ~~enclosed~~ lobby shall be prevented from infiltrating into the hoistway enclosure in accordance
6293 with an *approved* method.”

6294 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6296 **153. Subsection 3007.6, “Fire Service Access Elevator Lobby,” of Section 3007,**
6297 **“Fire Service Access Elevator,” of Chapter 30, “Elevators and Conveying Systems,” of the**
6298 **2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

6299 **“3007.6 Fire service access elevator lobby.** The fire service access elevator shall open into a fire
6300 service access elevator lobby in accordance with Sections 3007.6.1 through 3007.6.5. Egress is
6301 permitted through the elevator lobby in accordance with Item 1 of Section 1016.2. A fire service
6302 access elevator lobby must be one that is accessible for general public use.
6303

6304 **Exception:** Where a fire service access elevator has two entrances onto a floor, the second
6305 entrance shall be permitted to open into an elevator lobby in accordance with Section 3006.3.

6306
6307 **3007.6.1 Access to interior exit stairway or ramp.** The fire service access elevator lobby
6308 shall have direct access from the enclosed elevator lobby to an enclosure for an *interior exit*
6309 *stairway* or *ramp*.

6310
6311 **Exception:** Access to an *interior exit stairway* or *ramp* shall be permitted to be through a
6312 protected path of travel that has a level of fire protection not less than the elevator lobby
6313 enclosure. The protected path shall be separated from the enclosed elevator lobby through
6314 an opening protected by a smoke and draft control assembly in accordance Section 716.5.3.
6315

6316 **3007.6.2 Lobby enclosure.** The fire service access elevator lobby shall be enclosed with a
6317 *smoke barrier* having a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than 1 hour, except that lobby
6318 doorways shall comply with Section 3007.6.3.

6319
6320 **Exception:** Enclosed fire service access elevator lobbies are not required at the *levels of*
6321 *exit discharge*.

6322
6323 **3007.6.3 Lobby doorways.** Other than doors to the hoistway, elevator control room or elevator
6324 control space, each doorway to a fire service access elevator lobby shall be provided with a
6325 *3/4-hour fire door assembly* complying with Section 716.5. The *fire door assembly* shall comply
6326 with the smoke and draft control door assembly requirements of Section 716.5.3.1 with the UL
6327 1784 test conducted without the artificial bottom seal.

6328
6329 **3007.6.4 Lobby size.** Regardless of the number of fire service access elevators served by the
6330 same elevator lobby, the enclosed fire service access elevator lobby shall be not less than 150
6331 square feet (14 m²) in an area with a dimension of not less than 8 feet (2440 mm).
6332

6333 **3007.6.5 Fire service access elevator symbol.** A pictorial symbol of a standardized design
6334 designating which elevators are fire service access elevators shall be installed on each side of
6335 the hoistway door frame on the portion of the frame at right angles to the fire service access
6336 elevator lobby. The fire service access elevator symbol shall be designed as shown in Figure
6337 3007.6.5 and shall comply with the following:

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 6338 1. The fire service access elevator symbol shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in height.
6339
6340 2. The helmet shall contrast with the background, with either a light helmet on a dark
6341 background or a dark helmet on a light background.
6342
6343 3. The vertical center line of the fire service access elevator symbol shall be centered on
6344 the hoistway door frame. Each symbol shall be not less than 78 inches (1981 mm), and
6345 not more than 84 inches (2134 mm) above the finished floor at the threshold.”
6346

New COG Amendment

6347 **154. Subsection 3008.3, “Water Protection,” of Section 3008, “Occupant evacuation**
6348 **Elevators,” of Chapter 30, “Elevators and Conveying Systems,” of the 2021 International**

6349 **Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

6350
6351
6352 **“3007.3 Water Protection.** Water from the operation of an *automatic sprinkler system* outside
6353 the ~~enclosed~~ lobby shall be prevented from infiltrating into the hoistway enclosure in accordance
6354 with an *approved* method.”
6355

Carryover Dallas Amendment

6356 **155. Subsection 3102.1, “General,” of Section 3102, “Membrane Structures,” of**
6357 **Chapter 31, “Special Construction,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to**

6358 **read as follows:**

6359
6360 **“3102.1 General.** The provisions of Sections 3102.1 through 3102.8 shall apply to air-supported,
6361 air-inflated, membrane-covered cable, membrane-covered frame and *tensile membrane structures*,
6362 collectively known as membrane structures, erected for a period of 31 consecutive [~~180~~] days or
6363 longer. Those erected for a shorter period of time shall comply with the *Dallas [International]*
6364 *Fire Code*. Membrane structures covering water storage facilities, water clarifiers, water treatment
6365 plants, sewage treatment plants, greenhouses and similar facilities not used for human occupancy
6366 are required to meet only the requirements of Sections 3102.3.1 and 3102.7. Membrane structures
6367 erected on a building, balcony, deck or other structure for any period of time shall comply with
6368 this section. A tent, other fabric, membrane structure or portion of a structure intended to be in
6369 place temporarily must comply with the provisions of Chapter 39.
6370

6371 **3102.1.1 Tensile membrane structures and air-supported structures.** Tensile membrane
6372 structures and air-supported structures, including permanent and temporary structures, shall be
6373 designed and constructed in accordance with ASCE 55. The provisions in Sections 3102.3
6374 through 3106.2 shall apply.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6375 **3102.1.2 Other code provisions.** Except as specifically required by this section, membrane
6376 structures must meet any other applicable provisions of this code.
6377

6378 **Exception:** Membrane structures need not comply with the provisions of this section where
6379 they completely comply with other applicable provisions of this code.
6380

6381 **3102.1.3 Permeable covers.** For purposes of this chapter, permeable covers are considered
6382 floor area.
6383

6384 **Exception:** Open-grid covers in which the openings are ¼ inch (6.4 mm) or larger in the
6385 least dimension and when such openings constitute at least 75 percent of the area of the
6386 covering material.”
6387

6388 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

6389 **156. Subsection 3103.1, “General,” of Section 3103, “Temporary Structures,” of**
6390 **Chapter 31, “Special Construction,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to**
6391 **read as follows:**

6392 **“3103.1 General.** The provisions of Sections 3103.1 through 3103.4 shall apply to structures
6393 erected for a period of less than 31 [~~180~~] days. *Special event structures*, tents, umbrella structures
6394 and other membrane structures erected for a period of less than 31 consecutive [~~180~~] days shall
6395 comply with the Dallas [~~International~~] Fire Code and Chapter 39 of this code. Those erected for
6396 a longer period of time shall comply with applicable sections of this code.
6397

6398 **3103.1.1 Conformance.** Temporary structures and uses shall conform to the structural
6399 strength, fire safety, *means of egress*, accessibility, light, ventilation and sanitary requirements
6400 of this code as necessary to ensure public health, safety and general welfare.

6401 **Updated per June 13, 2022 amendment.**

6402 **3103.1.2 Permit required.** Temporary structures shall require permits as per Chapter 52,
6403 “Administrative Procedures for the Construction Codes,” of the Dallas City Codes.”
6404

6405 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

6406 **157. Subsection 3104.1, “General,” of Section 3104, “Pedestrian Walkways and**
6407 **Tunnels,” of Chapter 31, “Special Construction,” of the 2021 International Building Code is**
6408 **amended to read as follows:**

6409 **“3104.1 General.** This section shall apply to connections between buildings such as *pedestrian*
6410 *walkways* or tunnels, located at, above or below grade level, that are used as a means of travel by
6411 persons. Except for determination of the building fire area in Section 511.1.2, [~~The~~] *pedestrian*
6412 *walkways* shall not contribute to the *building area* or the number of *stories* or height of connected
6413 buildings.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6414 **3104.1.1 Application.** Pedestrian walkways shall be designed and constructed in accordance
6415 with Sections 3104.2 through 3104.9. Tunnels shall be designed and constructed in accordance
6416 with Sections 3104.2 and 3104.10.”

6417 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

6418 **158. Chapter 31, “Special Construction,” of the 2021 International Building Code**
6419
6420 **is amended by adding a new Section 3116, “Fixed Guideway Transit System Stations,” to**
6421 **read as follows:**

6422 **“SECTION 3116** 6423 **FIXED GUIDEWAY TRANSIT SYSTEM STATIONS**

6424
6425 **3116.1 General.** Where provided, fixed guideway transit system stations must be installed in
6426 accordance with NFPA 130.

6427
6428 **Exception: Means of egress from fixed guideway transit system must comply with Chapter**
6429 **10.”**
6430

6431 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

6432 **159. Chapter 31, “Special Construction,” of the 2021 International Building Code**
6433
6434 **is amended by adding a new Section 3117, “Storage Racks,” to read as follows:**

6435 **“SECTION 3117** 6436 **STORAGE RACKS**

6437
6438
6439 **3117.1 Applicability.** The provisions of this section apply to all parts of buildings and structures
6440 that contain bin box storage or shelf storage rack systems.
6441

6442 **3117.2 Definitions.** The following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this section and as
6443 used elsewhere in this code, have the meanings shown herein.
6444

6445 **BIN BOX STORAGE.** Storage in five-sided boxes with an open face on each aisle. Boxes are
6446 self-supporting or supported by a structure designed so that little or no horizontal or vertical space
6447 exists around boxes.
6448

6449 **RACK SYSTEMS.** Structures designed to store materials and products.
6450

6451 **SHELF STORAGE.** Storage on structures equal to or less than 30 inches (752 mm) deep with
6452 shelves a maximum of 2 feet (610 mm) apart vertically and separated by minimum 30-inch (762
6453 mm) aisles.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6454 **3117.3 Rack systems.** Bin box storage or shelf storage rack systems, including their aisles and
6455 stairs, must not contribute to the number of stories as regulated by Section 503 or to the number
6456 of mezzanines as regulated by Section 505 where meeting all of the following conditions:
6457

- 6458 1. The building, including the rack systems, is equipped throughout with an automatic
6459 sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.
6460
- 6461 2. The rack systems, aisles, and stairs are not part of the structural framework of the building.
6462
- 6463 3. The rack systems and stairs are of noncombustible materials. The aisles are of expanded
6464 metal or metal grid.
6465
- 6466 4. The structural design of the rack systems, aisles, and stairs, complies with Chapter 16 and
6467 Section 2209.
6468
- 6469 5. The aisles and stairways are designed to comply with the means of egress provisions of
6470 Chapter 10.
6471

6472 **3117.4 Other requirements.** In addition, rack storage in high-piled combustible storage areas
6473 must comply with Chapter 32 of the Dallas Fire Code.”
6474

6475 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

6476 **160. Subsection 3201.4, “Drainage,” of Section 3201, “General,” of Chapter 32,**
6477 **“Encroachments Into the Public Right-of-Way,” of the 2021 International Building Code is**
6478 **amended to read as follows:**

6479 **“3201.4 Drainage.** Drainage water collected from a roof, awning, canopy or marquee, and
6480 condensate from mechanical equipment shall not flow over a public walking surface except as
6481 permitted by Section 1101 of the Dallas Plumbing Code.”
6482

6483 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

6484 **161. Section 3303, “Demolition,” of Chapter 33, “Safeguards During**
6485 **Construction,” of the 2021 International Building Code is deleted and replaced with a new**
6486 **Section 3303, “Demolition,” to read as follows:**

6488 **“SECTION 3303**
6489 **DEMOLITION**

6491 **3303.1 General.** Demolition activities are regulated under Chapter 40 of this code.”
6492

6493 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6494 162. **Subsection 3310.1, “Stairways Required,” of Section 3310, “Means of Egress,”**
6495 **of Chapter 33, “Safeguards During Construction,” of the 2021 International Building Code**
6496 **is amended to read as follows:**

6497 **“3310.1 Stairways required.** Where a building construction exceeds 35 [40] feet (10 668 [~~12 192~~]
6498 mm) in height above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access, a temporary or permanent
6499 *stairway* shall be provided. As construction progresses, such as *stairway* shall be extended to
6500 within one floor of the highest point of construction having secured decking or flooring.”

6501
6502 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

6503 163. **Subsection [F] 3311.1, “Where Required,” of Section 3311, “Standpipes,” of**
6504 **Chapter 33, “Safeguards During Construction,” of the 2021 International Building Code is**
6505 **amended to read as follows:**

6507 **“[F] 3311.1 Where required.** In buildings required to have standpipes by Section 905.3.1, no
6508 fewer than one standpipe shall be provided for use during construction. Such standpipes shall be
6509 installed prior to construction exceeding 35 [40] feet (10 668 [~~12 192~~] mm) in height above the
6510 lowest level of fire department vehicle access. Such standpipes shall be provided with fire
6511 department hose connections at locations adjacent to *stairways* complying with Section 3310.1.
6512 As construction progresses to within one floor of the highest point of construction having secured
6513 decking or flooring.”

6514
6515 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

6516 164. **The introductory paragraph to Chapter 35, “Referenced Standards,” of the**
6517 **2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

6518 “About this chapter: The International Building Code contains numerous references to standards
6519 promulgated by other organization that are used to provide requirements for materials and methods
6520 of construction. This chapter contains a comprehensive list of all standards that are referenced in
6521 this code. These standards, in essence, are part of this code to the extent of the reference to the
6522 standard.

6523 This chapter lists the standards that area referenced in various sections of this document. The
6524 standards are listed herein by the promulgating agency of the standard, the standard identification,
6525 the effective date and title, and the section or sections of this document that reference the standard.
6526 The application of the referenced standards shall be as specified in Section 101.4 of Chapter 52,
6527 “Administrative Procedures for the Construction Codes,” of the *Dallas City Code* [~~102.4~~].”

6528
6529 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6530 **165. The ASME standards of Chapter 35, “Referenced Standards,” of the 2021**
 6531 **International Building Code are amended by amending the following standard to read as**
 6532 **follows:**

6533 “ASME/A17.1—13
 6534 CSA B44—2013 Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators907.3.3, 911.1.5, 1009.4,
 6535 1607.9.1, 3001.2, 3001.4, 3002.5,
 6536 3003.2, 3005.7.2.1, 3007.1, 3008.1.3, 3008.7.1”
 6537

Carryover Dallas Amendment

6538 **166. The NFPA standards of Chapter 35, “Referenced Standards,” of the 2021**
 6539 **International Building Code are amended by adding or amending the following standards to**
 6540 **read as follows:**

6542 “13—19 Installation of Sprinkler Systems.....708.2, 903.3.1.1, 903.3.2,
 6543 903.3.5.2, 903.3.8.2, 903.3.8.5,
 6544 904.11, 905.3.4, 907.6.4, 1019.3, 3005.7.2.1”
 6545

6546 “13D—19 Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems in One- and Two-family
 6547 Dwellings and Manufactured Homes... .. 903.3.1.3, 903.3.5.2”
 6548

6549
 6550 “13R—19 Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems in
 6551 Low Rise Residential Occupancies..... 903.3.1.2, 903.3.5.2, 903.4”
 6552

6553 “14—19 Standard for the Installation of Standpipe and Hose System.....905.2, 905.3.4,
 6554 905.3.9, 905.4.2, 905.6.2, 905.8”
 6555

6556 “25—23 Standard for the Inspection, Testing and Maintenance of Water-based Fire Protection Systems
 6557 905.12”
 6558
 6559

6560 “72—19 National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code... .. 407.4.4.3, 407.4.4.5, 407.4.4.5.1,
 6561 901.6, 903.4.1, 904.3.5, 907.2, 907.2.6, 907.2.11,
 6562 907.2.13.1.2, 907.2.13.2, 907.3, 907.3.3, 907.3.4, 907.5.2.1.2,
 6563 907.5.2.2, 907.5.2.2.5, 907.6, 907.6.1, 907.6.1.4, 907.6.2, 907.6.6,
 6564 907.7, 907.7.1, 907.7.2, 907.2.9.3, 911.1.5, 2702.2.4, 3005.5, 3005.7.5, 3007.7”
 6565

6566 “92—18 Standard for Smoke Control Systems..... 404.6, 909.7, 909.8”
 6567

6568 “130—20 Chapter 5, “Station.” of the Standard for Fixed Guideway
 6569 Transit Systems 3116.1”
 6570

6571 “409—[16] 22 Standard for Aircraft Hangars.....412.3.6,
 6572 Table 412.3.6, 412.3.6.1, 412.5.5”
 6573

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6574 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6575 167. The 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new Chapter
6576 36, “Signs,” to read as follows:

“CHAPTER 36 SIGNS

SECTION 3601 PERMITS

6577
6578
6579
6580
6581
6582
6583 **3601.1 General.** The building official shall receive applications, review construction documents
6584 and issue permits for the erection, and alteration, demolition and moving of signs and structures,
6585 inspect the premises for which such permits have been issued and enforce compliance with the
6586 provisions of this code in accordance with Chapter 52, “Administrative Procedures of the
6587 Construction Codes,” of the Dallas City Code.

SECTION 3602 DEFINITIONS

6590
6591
6592
6593 **3602.1 Definitions.** For the purposes of this chapter, definitions contained in the *Dallas*
6594 *Development Code* shall be used.

SECTION 3603 ELECTRICAL

6596
6597
6598
6599 **3603.1 General.** Every sign in which electrical wiring and connections are used shall comply with
6600 the requirements of the *Dallas Electrical Code*. In addition, each illuminated sign shall bear the
6601 Underwriters Laboratory® label or be built to comply with Underwriters Laboratory®
6602 requirements.

6604 **3603.2 Utility lines.** No sign may be erected nearer than 2 feet (609.6 mm) from any telephone
6605 cable, electrical street light standard or electrical power distribution line when voltage between
6606 conductors is less than 300 volts. If the voltage between conductors is 300 volts or greater,
6607 clearance shall be maintained in accordance with the *Dallas Electrical Code*.

6609 **3603.3 Protection.** Wire glass, safety glass, a locked box of metal or wood, or any other approved
6610 method shall protect an electrical device within reach of persons on public property.

SECTION 3604 DESIGN

6612
6613
6614
6615 **3604.1 General.** Every sign and its supports shall be designed as specified for a building in this
6616 code. All supports shall be designed to transfer lateral forces to the foundations. An attached sign
6617 shall be designed to transmit the dead and lateral loads through the structural frame of the building

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6618 in such a manner as to not overstress any element.
6619

6620 **3604.2 Wind pressure.** Every sign and its supports shall be designed to withstand a minimum
6621 allowable resultant wind pressure of 30 pounds per square foot.
6622

6623 **3604.3 Dead load resisting moment.** The overturning moment produced from lateral forces may
6624 in no case exceed two-thirds of the dead load resisting moment. Uplift shall be adequately resisted
6625 by proper anchorage to the ground or to the structural frame of the building. The weight
6626 superimposed over footings or supports may be used in determining the dead load resisting
6627 moment.
6628

6629 **3604.4 Allowable stress.** The design of wood, concrete, steel or aluminum members shall conform
6630 to the requirements of this code. Loads, both vertical and horizontal, exerted on the soil shall not
6631 produce stresses exceeding those specified in this code.
6632

6633 The working stresses of wire rope and its fastening shall not exceed 25 percent of the ultimate
6634 strength.
6635

6636 Working stresses for wind loads combined with dead loads may be increased as specified in
6637 this code.

SECTION 3605 **CONSTRUCTION**

6641 **3605.1 General.** Every sign and its supports shall be built, constructed and erected in conformance
6642 with the requirements of all applicable laws and ordinances.
6643

6644 **3605.2 Materials.** Materials of construction for each sign and its supports shall be of the quality,
6645 type and grade as specified for a building in this code. In the absence of detailed requirements,
6646 material shall conform to the following:
6647

6648 1. Structural steel shall be of such quality as to conform to Chapter 22. Secondary members
6649 of a sign in contact with, or directly supporting the display surface may be formed of light
6650 gauge steel, provided the members are designed in accordance with the specifications of
6651 the design of light gauge steel as specified in Chapter 22 and are galvanized. Secondary
6652 members, when formed integrally with the display surface, shall not be less than No. 24
6653 gauge in thickness. When not formed integrally with the display surface, the minimum
6654 thickness of hot-rolled steel members furnishing structural support for a sign shall be ¼
6655 inch, except that if galvanized, such members shall not be less than 1/8 inch thick. Steel
6656 pipes shall be of such quality as to conform to Chapter 22. Steel members may be connected
6657 with a galvanized bolt, provided the connection is adequate to transfer the stresses in the
6658 members.
6659

6660 2. Anchors and supports, when of wood and embedded in the soil or within 6 inches (152.4
6661 mm) of the soil, shall be of all heartwood of a durable species or shall be pressure treated
6662 with an approved preservative. Such members shall be marked or branded by an approved

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6663 agency.

6664

6665 3. Glass thickness and area limitations are as required in Chapter 24.

6666

6667 4. Approved plastics may be used as set forth in Chapter 26 for plastic veneer. Location, size
6668 and spacing shall be as set forth in Chapter 26 for glazing or veneer.

6669

6670 5. Awnings and marquees that also serve as signs shall be constructed of materials as required
6671 by Sections 3105 and 3106.

6672

6673 6. Attached signs on Type I or Type II buildings, other than those specified in Section 3605.2(5),
6674 and detached signs located within 3 feet (914.4 mm) of any Type I or Type II building or
6675 within 3 feet (914.4 mm) of any property line, exclusive of a public way, shall be
6676 constructed of noncombustible materials.

6677

6678 **3605.3 Height clearance.** Except for an attached sign which does not project more than 2 inches
6679 (50.8 mm) from the building facade, every sign shall have the following minimum clearance from
6680 the surface immediately below:

6681

6682 1. Ten feet (3048 mm) when located above a sidewalk.

6683

6684 2. Twelve feet (3657.6 mm) when located above a parking lot, parking space, driveway or
6685 head-in parking.

6686

6687 3. Fourteen feet (4267.2 mm) when located above a fire lane.

6688

6689 **3605.4 Location.** Location of a sign shall be in accordance with the *Dallas Development Code*.

6690

6691 **3605.5 Clearance from fire escapes, exits or standpipes.** No sign or its supports may be erected
6692 in a manner that will interfere in any way with the use of any fire escape, exit or standpipe. No
6693 sign or its supports may be attached to a standpipe or fire escape.

6694

6695 **3605.6 Obstruction of openings in buildings.** No sign or its supports may obstruct any required
6696 openings to such an extent that light or ventilation is reduced below that required.

6697

6698 **3605.7 Weatherproofing.** Every sign shall be constructed so as to prevent the accumulation of
6699 water.

6700

6701 **3605.8 Sign maintenance.** The owner of any premises upon which a sign is erected shall maintain
6702 the sign and its supports. If any sign becomes dangerous to life, limb or property; or an obstruction
6703 to the use of any sidewalk or roadway; or interferes with the operation of the fire department, it is
6704 the responsibility of the owner of the premises or the owner's agent to remove or repair the sign.”

6705

6706 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6707 168. The 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new Chapter

6708 37, “Moving of Structures,” to read as follows:

6709 **“CHAPTER 37**
6710 **MOVING OF STRUCTURES**
6711

6712 **SECTION 3701**
6713 **GENERAL**
6714

6715 **3701.1 License required.** No person shall own, maintain, conduct, operate or engage in the
6716 business of moving structures along, across or over any public street, alley, highway or other public
6717 place without holding a valid annual license issued by the *building official* to engage in the building
6718 mover's business.
6719

6720 **Exceptions:** No license is required if a permit exemption applies in accordance with Chapter
6721 52, “Administrative Procedures for the Construction Codes,” of the *Dallas City Code*.
6722

6723 **SECTION 3702**
6724 **LICENSE APPLICATION**
6725

6726 **3702.1 Application requirement.** An applicant desiring to engage in the business of moving
6727 structures along, across or over a public street in the city shall file with the *building official* a
6728 written application on a form provided for that purpose, which shall be signed by the applicant or
6729 the applicant's authorized agent.
6730

6731 **3702.2 Contents of application.** The application shall contain:
6732

6733 1. The names, addresses and telephone numbers of the building moving company and all
6734 affiliated places of business and storage facilities;
6735

6736 2. The number and type of vehicles to be operated in connection with the business;
6737

6738 3. The name, address, telephone number and Social Security number of the owner of the
6739 building moving company; and
6740

6741 4. Proof of compliance with the insurance requirements of Section 3704.
6742

6743 **3702.3 Surety bond.** The applicant shall also file with the *building official*, on a form furnished
6744 by the city, a surety bond by a surety acceptable to the city in the sum of not less than \$5,000 and
6745 as required by Section 3710.8. The bond shall protect the city from any costs, damages and suits
6746 that may result from the moving of any vehicle, equipment or load in the public right-of-way or
6747 from injury to any person or property, whether public or private, that may arise from the use of
6748 any street, alley or public place in the moving of any structure. The bond shall provide that 30 days
6749 written notice be given to the *building official* in the event of any material change or cancellation

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6750 of the bond by the surety.
6751

6752 **3702.4 Indemnification.** An applicant shall execute, and file with the *building official*, a written
6753 agreement to indemnify the city and its officers, agents and employees against all claims of injury
6754 or damage to persons or property, whether public or private, arising out of the moving of a
6755 structure.
6756

6757 **3702.5 Established place of business.** An applicant is required to maintain a regular and
6758 established place of business at a location where a building moving company is not prohibited by
6759 municipal ordinance and for which every license, tax permit and certificate of occupancy, if
6760 required by law, has been issued and is in force.
6761

6762 **3702.6 Approval or denial of application.** When a complete application for a license or a license
6763 renewal has been filed with the *building official* in proper form, the *building official* shall, within
6764 a period of 30 days after the date of filing, approve or deny the application. If the application is
6765 denied, the *building official* shall send to the applicant by certified mail to the designated address
6766 shown on the application, return receipt requested, a written statement setting forth the reasons for
6767 the denial.
6768

6769 **3702.7 Additional information.** The *building official* may, at any time, require additional
6770 information of a licensee or an applicant related to an application.
6771

SECTION 3703 **FEE**

6772
6773
6774
6775 **3703.1 Fee.** The annual fee for a building mover's license is \$260 for each moving company. The
6776 fee for issuing a duplicate license for one lost, destroyed or mutilated is \$25. Fees are payable to
6777 the *building official* upon issuance of a license. No refund of a fee will be made.
6778

SECTION 3704 **LICENSE ISSUANCE; EXPIRATION; NON-TRANSFERABILITY**

6779
6780
6781
6782 **3704.1 License qualifications.** The *building official* shall issue a license to engage in the business
6783 of moving structures to all applicants complying with the provisions of this chapter. No license
6784 authorizing the moving of structures on the streets of the city may be issued unless all requirements
6785 of this section are met.
6786

6787 **3704.1.1 Insurance.** The applicant shall procure and keep in full force and effect commercial
6788 general liability insurance and comprehensive automobile liability insurance written by an
6789 insurance company approved by the State of Texas and acceptable to the city and issued in the
6790 standard form approved by the Texas Department of Insurance. All provisions of the policy
6791 shall be acceptable to the city. The insured provisions of the policy shall name the city and its
6792 officers and employees as additional insureds. The coverage types and limits set forth in this
6793 section shall be maintained at all times during the term of the license.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6794 **3704.1.1.1 Commercial general liability insurance.** The commercial general liability
6795 insurance shall provide combined single limits of liability for bodily injury and property
6796 damage of not less than \$500,000 for each occurrence, or the equivalent, and include
6797 coverage for premises operations, independent contractors, products/completed operations,
6798 personal injury, contractual liability and medical payments.
6799

6800 **3704.1.1.2 Comprehensive automobile liability insurance.** The comprehensive
6801 automobile liability insurance shall provide combined single limits of liability for bodily
6802 injury and property damage of not less than \$500,000 for each occurrence, or the
6803 equivalent, for each motor vehicle used by the licensee.
6804

6805 **3704.1.1.3 Cancellation provisions.** Each insurance policy shall include a cancellation
6806 provision in which the insurance company is required to notify the *building official* in
6807 writing not fewer than 30 days before canceling, failing to renew or making a material
6808 change to the policy.
6809

6810 **3704.1.2 Indemnification agreement.** The applicant shall execute a written agreement to
6811 indemnify the city and its officers and employees against all claims of injury or damage to
6812 persons or property arising out of the moving of a structure by the licensee.
6813

6814 **3704.1.3 Identification of structure, vehicles and equipment.** The name of the applicant
6815 shall be painted, stenciled or otherwise permanently affixed in clearly legible letters not less
6816 than 3 inches (76.2 mm) high on all structures being moved and on all vehicles, trailers,
6817 lowboys, beams or other equipment to be used.
6818

6819 **3704.2 Expiration of license.** A building mover's license expires one year from the date of
6820 issuance.
6821

6822 **3704.3 Nontransferability of license.** A building mover's license is not assignable or transferable.
6823

6824 **SECTION 3705**

6825 **LICENSE-DISPLAY, DUPLICATES, RENEWAL AND CHANGES**

6826

6827 **3705.1 License display.** Each license issued pursuant to this chapter shall be posted and kept in
6828 a conspicuous place in the building mover's establishment.
6829

6830 **3705.2 License duplicates.** A duplicate license may be issued for one lost, destroyed or mutilated
6831 upon application on a form prescribed by the *building official*. Each duplicate license shall have
6832 the word "duplicate" stamped across its face.
6833

6834 **3705.3 License renewal.** A licensee shall apply for renewal of a building mover's license at least
6835 30 days before expiration of the license.
6836

6837 **3705.4 Notification of changes.** Every licensee shall, within 10 days after a partial change of
6838 control in ownership or management, or a change of address or trade name, notify the *building*

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6839 official of the changes. If complete ownership of a building moving company is changed, the new
6840 owner shall apply for a new building mover's license in accordance with Section 3702.
6841

6842 **SECTION 3706**
6843 **REFUSAL TO ISSUE OR RENEW A LICENSE**
6844

6845 **3706.1 Refusal to issue or renew license.** The *building official* shall refuse to issue or renew a
6846 building mover's license for any of the following reasons:
6847

- 6848 1. The making of any false statement as to a material matter in an application for a license or
6849 license renewal, or in a hearing concerning the license.
6850
- 6851 2. Conviction of the licensee, applicant or any employee while in the scope of employment
6852 with the licensee or applicant for a violation of this chapter.
6853
- 6854 3. Revocation of a license, pursuant to this chapter, of the applicant, or of any proprietor,
6855 partner or corporate officer in a building moving company, within one year preceding
6856 application unless the one year is specifically waived by the Building Inspection Advisory,
6857 Examining and Appeals Board.
6858
- 6859 4. Failure of the licensee to obtain the bond and insurance required by this chapter for a
6860 building mover's license.
6861

6862 **SECTION 3707**
6863 **LICENSE REVOCATION**
6864

6865 **3707.1 Grounds for revocation.** The *building official* shall revoke a building mover's license for
6866 any one or more of the following reasons:
6867

- 6868 1. The making of any false statement as to a material matter in an application for a license or
6869 license renewal, or in a hearing concerning the license.
6870
- 6871 2. Conviction of the licensee, or any employee while in the scope of employment with the
6872 licensee, of a violation of Section 3701, 3704, 3710, 3711, 3712, 3713, 3714, 3715 or 3716.
6873
- 6874 3. Failure of the licensee to maintain the bond and insurance required by this chapter for a
6875 building mover's license.
6876

6877 **3707.2 Notice of revocation.** The *building official* shall send written notice of revocation to the
6878 licensee by certified mail, return receipt requested, setting forth the reason for, and the effective
6879 date of, the revocation.
6880

6881 **SECTION 3708**
6882 **APPEAL**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6883 **3708.1 Appeal rights and procedures.** If the *building official* refuses to approve the issuance of
6884 an original license or the renewal of a license to any applicant, or revokes the license issued to any
6885 licensee under this chapter, this action is final subject to the licensee's right, within 10 days after
6886 the receipt of written notice of the action, to file with the Building Inspection Advisory, Examining
6887 and Appeals board a written appeal. The *building official* shall cause all documents constituting
6888 the records upon which the action was appealed to be forwarded to the board. The hearing before
6889 the board shall be public and any interested party may appear in person, by agent or by legal
6890 counsel. The board shall, within 30 days after the appeal is filed, hear and consider all the evidence
6891 in support of or against the action appealed and render a decision either sustaining or reversing the
6892 action. The board shall have authority to sustain, reverse or modify the action appealed. The
6893 decision of the board is final as to administrative remedies in the city.
6894

6895 **3708.2 Other remedies not affected by appeal.** Nothing in this section is deemed to abolish or
6896 impair remedies of the city or its officers, agents or employees relative to the removal or demolition
6897 of any structure which is deemed to be dangerous, unsafe, unsanitary, unfit for human habitation,
6898 constructed or maintained in violation of the *Dallas Development Code*, or so located as to be a
6899 hazard to the traveling public or to constitute a public nuisance.
6900

6901 **SECTION 3709** 6902 **POWERS AND DUTIES OF THE BUILDING OFFICIAL** 6903

6904 **3709.1 General.** In addition to the powers and duties elsewhere prescribed in this code, the
6905 *building official* is required to:
6906

- 6907 1. Administer and enforce all provisions of this chapter;
6908
- 6909 2. Keep records of all licenses issued or revoked; and
6910
- 6911 3. Adopt such rules and regulations, not inconsistent with this chapter, with respect to the
6912 form and content of applications for licenses, the investigation of applicants, and other
6913 matters incidental or appropriate to the *building official's* powers and duties that may be
6914 necessary for the proper administration and enforcement of this chapter.
6915

6916 **SECTION 3710** 6917 **PERMIT TO MOVE A STRUCTURE** 6918

6919 **3710.1 Permit required.** The licensee shall obtain from the *building official* a separate permit for
6920 each move of a structure or portion of a structure along, across or over the public way, except that
6921 a single permit may be issued to authorize the moving of a structure in more than one piece, if all
6922 portions of the structure are moved at the same time. Permits for moving structures along the public
6923 ways may only be issued to licensed building movers.
6924

6925 **3710.2 Permit application.** Application for each permit shall be made on a form provided for
6926 that purpose. The moving permit fee required in Section 3716 shall accompany the application

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6927 and, if applicable, the inspection fee required in Section 3711, and shall contain the following
6928 information:
6929

- 6930 1. A description of the structure to be moved.
- 6931
- 6932 2. The overall height, width and length of the structure.
- 6933
- 6934 3. The present location of the structure.
- 6935
- 6936 4. The location to which the structure is to be moved.
- 6937
- 6938 5. All other information that may be required.
- 6939

6940 **3710.3 Other permits.**

6941

6942 **3710.3.1 Building permit and site plan.** Except when a structure is moved to a location
6943 outside the city limits or to an approved temporary storage site, each application for a moving
6944 permit shall be accompanied by an application for a building permit, along with a site plan
6945 showing the location of the moved structure on the new site, signed by the owner of the site to
6946 which the structure is being moved, stating the use to which the structure is to be put, stating
6947 that the destination site is properly zoned for the proposed use and describing the work to be
6948 done to repair or remodel the structure.
6949

6950 **3710.3.2 Requirements of building permit.** The building permit shall require the following:
6951

- 6952 1. The structure shall be completely moved to the new site within 30 days after the date
6953 the moving permit is issued.
- 6954
- 6955 2. Work shall be started on the structure within 10 days after the date the structure arrives
6956 at the new site.
- 6957
- 6958 3. The structure shall be placed on an approved permanent foundation within 60 days after
6959 the date the moving permit is issued.
- 6960
- 6961 4. Within 100 days after the date the moving permit is issued, the exterior of the structure
6962 shall be made to comply with this code and all other applicable city ordinances and all
6963 exterior construction work shall be completed, including, but not limited to, the
6964 completion of all site work, paving, grading and site cleanup and the installation, repair
6965 and replacement of all siding, roofing, doors, windows, trim, paint, steps, porches and
6966 other work visible from the street or any neighboring property.
- 6967
- 6968 5. Completion of interior work on the structure shall proceed in compliance with other
6969 provisions of this code and other applicable city ordinances.
- 6970

6971 **3710.3.3 Failure to comply.** Failure to comply with the requirements of Section 3710.3.2 may

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6972 result in the revocation of the building permit and the structure will then become subject to the
6973 provisions of Chapter 27, “Minimum Urban Rehabilitation Standards,” of the *Dallas City*
6974 *Code*, as amended.
6975

6976 **3710.4 Issuance, expiration and renewal.**

6977
6978 **3710.4.1 Issuance.** Upon receipt of an application for a moving permit, the structure to be
6979 moved shall be inspected, and if it is found to be in conformity with, or can be made to comply
6980 with, the requirements of this code and other applicable ordinances, a moving permit shall be
6981 issued upon payment of the fee required by this chapter. A moving permit shall be issued for
6982 each move to the destination site. If moving of the structure will violate any provision of this
6983 chapter, the *building official* shall not issue the moving permit, and the structure may not be
6984 moved.
6985

6986 **3710.4.2 Expiration.** A moving permit expires two years after the date the permit is issued.
6987

6988 **3710.4.3 Renewal.** A moving permit may be renewed one time for a period not to exceed 30
6989 additional days if written application by the building mover and payment of a \$100 renewal
6990 fee is received by the *building official* prior to the original permit expiration date. A moving
6991 permit that has expired may not be renewed except by application for a new permit and
6992 payment of all required permit fees.
6993

6994 **3710.5 Temporary storage.** A person who stores within the city a structure which has been moved
6995 from its original construction site to a location, without placing the structure on an approved
6996 foundation with anchorage and support, shall provide a solid fence or wall with plant screening
6997 surrounding the storage area which complies with provisions of the *Dallas Development Code*
6998 relating to storage of structures. This provision does not prohibit the location of new structures on
6999 bona fide sales lots displaying examples of workmanship and appearance of structures to be sold
7000 and constructed on individual remote sites.
7001

7002 **3710.6 Unlawful acts not authorized by permit.** The issuance or granting of a permit pursuant
7003 to this section does not authorize the violation of any provision of this code or other applicable
7004 ordinances. The issuance of a permit does not prevent the *building official* from requiring
7005 correction of errors or from preventing moving operations along the public ways which are in
7006 violation of this code or any other city ordinance, which violate or disturb the public peace, general
7007 welfare or public safety, or which create a nuisance.
7008

7009 **3710.7 Removal of obstructions; time and route.** Movements authorized by permit shall be
7010 made at the time and along the route specified by the *building official*. The granting of the permit
7011 does not authorize the cutting or removing of trees or branches or the adjustment of wires, utilities,
7012 signs, markers or public facilities. The mover shall give notice in the manner required by Section
7013 3712.2 to the utility companies to remove the meters and public utility facilities prior to moving.
7014

7015 **3710.8 Bond required.** The owner of the structure to be moved or of the site to which the structure
7016 is being moved shall, upon application for a permit to move a structure, file with the *building*

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7017 official a cash bond, or a surety bond by a surety acceptable to the city, to cover the city's costs of
7018 bringing the site to which a structure has been moved back to its original state should any exterior
7019 work on the site or structure not be completed in compliance with the time schedule set forth in
7020 Section 3710.3.2. The amount of the bond required is equal to \$1 for each square foot of structure
7021 being moved, measured from the structure's exterior, or \$10,000, whichever is greater. Action by
7022 the city that is covered by the bond may include, but is not limited to, demolition or removal of
7023 the structure. A surety bond shall provide that 30 days' written notice be given to the *building*
7024 *official* in the event of any material change in or cancellation of the bond by the surety.
7025

7026 **Exception:** The bond requirements do not apply if a structure is being moved to property
7027 owned by the federal or state government or a political subdivision of the state.
7028

7029 SECTION 3711 7030 PREMOVE INSPECTIONS 7031

7032 **3711.1 Request for inspection and payment of fees.** A person moving a structure to a lot located
7033 within the city shall request an inspection from the *building official* and pay all applicable fees
7034 required by Section 303 of Chapter 52 of the *Dallas City Code* at least five business days before
7035 the move is scheduled.
7036

7037 **Exception:** Industrialized building or housing units that maintain a current certification as an
7038 industrialized structure by the State of Texas shall not be assessed a pre-move inspection fee.
7039

7040 **3711.2 Inspection.** If the *building official* determines from inspection that a structure requested
7041 to be moved is in compliance with, or can be made to comply with, this code and all other
7042 applicable city ordinances and authorizes the structure to be moved into the city, the structure shall
7043 be moved within 90 days from the date of inspection or another inspection fee will be required.
7044

7045 **3711.3 Moving structures through the city.** A structure may be moved through the city from
7046 outside the city limits, if the destination site is outside the city, either pursuant to a Texas State
7047 Highway Department permit, if the move is over state or federal highways, or otherwise pursuant
7048 to the provisions of this chapter.
7049

7050 SECTION 3712 7051 WEIGHT AND SIZE REGULATIONS 7052

7053 **3712.1 Width.** The total width, including eaves, porches or other overhang, of any structure to be
7054 moved shall not exceed the width of any street, measured from normal curb alignment to normal
7055 curb alignment at any place along the route unless the mover obtains written approval of the
7056 *building official*. The width, length or height permitted to be moved may be reduced by the *building*
7057 *official* on the basis of traffic volume, geometrics of the route, or length of the move in terms of
7058 distance and time. The applicant shall investigate the route and provide for proper clearance along
7059 the route.
7060

7061 **3712.2 Height.** The total height of any structure to be moved shall not exceed 17½ feet (5334

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7062 mm) in height when loaded unless the mover gives evidence to the *building official* that the utility
7063 companies have received written notice of the move of an over height structure at least five
7064 business days before the scheduled move of a structure not exceeding 21 feet (6400 mm) in height
7065 and at least 15 business days before the scheduled move of a structure exceeding 21 feet (6400
7066 mm) in height.

7068 **3712.3 Weight.** The total weight of the vehicle and load shall not exceed the maximum weight
7069 limits, which are provided in Chapter 28 of the *Dallas City Code*, as amended.
7070

7071 **3712.4 Moving structures on bridges, underpasses and similar facilities.** No person shall
7072 operate any vehicle, including its load, over or on any bridge or through any underpass or similar
7073 facility unless the height and width of the vehicle and load is less than the vertical and horizontal
7074 clearance of the facility.
7075

7076 **3712.5 Moving operations to comply with state law.** Moving operations shall meet all
7077 requirements of the *Texas Transportation Code*, as amended, including the display of side or
7078 clearance flags and lights when and where required.
7079

7080 **SECTION 3713**

7081 **MOVING A STRUCTURE**

7082

7083 **3713.1 How movement is to be made.** The moving of a structure shall be conducted expeditiously
7084 and without unnecessary obstruction of the public way. If the vehicle or equipment becomes
7085 disabled so that normal operation is impossible or impractical, the person in charge of the moving
7086 shall have the vehicle and equipment, with loads, immediately removed to a temporary parking
7087 area off the traveled roadway and notify the *building official* of the inability to complete the move
7088 and of the temporary storage location of the structure. The vehicle and equipment shall be
7089 immediately restored to operating condition, the move rescheduled, and the vehicle and equipment
7090 escorted to the destination.
7091

7092 **3713.2 Parking, standing or storage prohibited.** The *building official* is authorized to remove,
7093 or have removed, any vehicle, equipment or load left parked or standing by a mover on any portion
7094 of the public right-of-way or other temporary storage place when the mover fails to remove the
7095 encroachment within a reasonable time. All costs incurred will be charged to the mover. No further
7096 permits shall be granted to the mover until the encroachments have been removed and the costs
7097 have been paid. Failure to pay the costs will result in recovery of the costs from the mover's surety
7098 bond filed pursuant to Section 3702.3.
7099

7100 **SECTION 3714**

7101 **ESCORT REQUIRED**

7102

7103 **3714.1 Escort required.** No person shall move any structure for which a permit is required by
7104 this chapter along, across or over any public way within the city unless accompanied by an escort
7105 who is approved by the *building official* and who has authority to direct traffic and exercise other
7106 police powers.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7107 **3714.2 Distribution or moving permit copies.** The building mover shall provide the escort a
7108 copy of the moving permit. When the moved structure has been placed at its final location, the
7109 building mover shall mark a copy of the moving permit with the date and time the move is
7110 completed and shall return the copy to the *building official* within three working days.
7111

7112 **3714.3 Escort fee.** The escort fee is determined by the mover and the escort and is in addition to
7113 the moving permit fee.
7114

7115 **SECTION 3715**
7116 **CLEANUP OF SITE FROM WHICH STRUCTURE IS REMOVED**
7117

7118 **3715.1 Requirements for clearing site.** Within 30 days after a structure is removed from a lot or
7119 tract of land within the city, the lot or tract of land shall be cleaned by the mover or owner of the
7120 lot and left free from any unsafe, hazardous or unsanitary condition. All debris, rubbish and waste
7121 material resulting from the moving shall be removed from the site. All portions of the structure,
7122 appurtenances and incidental accessory structures remaining after the removal of the structure shall
7123 be demolished, after obtaining a demolition permit pursuant to Chapter 40, by the mover or owner
7124 of the lot to grade level, including all wood, brick and concrete foundation and concrete elements
7125 such as porches, slabs and steps which have portions above the grade. The mover or owner of the
7126 lot shall leave the site blade clean and compact, level and smooth all basements, cellars, wells,
7127 cisterns, excavations, holes or depressions which extend below the grade of the site and are
7128 apparent as a consequence of the moving. The mover or owner of the lot shall plug air and
7129 watertight sewer laterals, house lines and any other sewer and plumbing connections.
7130

7131 **3715.2 Letter of intent to clear site.** The mover shall file, with the application for a permit, a
7132 letter of intent to clear the lot, signed by the mover and the owner of the lot from which the structure
7133 is to be removed. Failure of the mover or owner of the lot to clear the lot as required in Section
7134 3715.1, and in compliance with the submitted letter of intent, is a violation of Section 3715.
7135

7136 **SECTION 3716**
7137 **MOVING PERMIT FEES**
7138

7139 **3716.1 Moving permit fees.** In addition to filing an application for a permit to move a structure
7140 as provided in this chapter, the applicant shall pay all applicable fees required by Section 303,
7141 Chapter 52 of the *Dallas City Code*. A permit and accompanying fee is required for each move
7142 and, notwithstanding any other provisions of this code, no organization or agency is exempt from
7143 this fee.
7144

7145 **3716.2 Other fees.** Nothing in this section will relieve any person from the payment of any other
7146 fee required by other city ordinances or regulations.
7147

7148 **3716.3 Ad valorem taxes to be paid.** A moving permit shall not be issued until the city tax
7149 assessor and collector has determined that ad valorem taxes on the property concerned have been
7150 paid.”

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7151 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

7152 **169. The 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new Chapter**

7153 **38, “Fencing,” to read as follows:**

7154 **“CHAPTER 38**
7155 **FENCING**
7156

7157 **SECTION 3801**
7158 **HEIGHT**
7159

7160 **3801.1 General.** Fences shall not exceed the height provided in the *Dallas Development Code*.
7161

7162 **SECTION 3802**
7163 **STRENGTH**
7164

7165 **3802.1 General.** Fences shall be of sufficient strength to support their own dead load and to resist
7166 overturning. Fences over 9 feet (2743.2 mm) in height shall be designed as structures and have
7167 plans and specifications prepared by an engineer registered in the State of Texas.
7168

7169 **SECTION 3803**
7170 **VISIBILITY OBSTRUCTION PROHIBITED**
7171

7172 **3803.1 General.** No fence may be erected or maintained in a manner so as to be a visibility
7173 obstruction as defined in the *Dallas Development Code*.”
7174

7175 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

7176 **170. The 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new Chapter**

7177

7178 **39, “Tents,” to read as follows:**
7179

7180 **“CHAPTER 39**
7181 **TENTS**
7182

7183 **SECTION 3901**
7184 **SCOPE**
7185

7186 **3901.1 Scope.** This chapter applies only to a tent used for temporary operations. A tent or other
7187 fabric or membrane structure or portion of a structure intended to be in place permanently shall
7188 comply with the provisions of this code regulating permanent buildings and structures.
7189

7190 **SECTION 3902**
7191 **DEFINITIONS**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7192 **3902.1 Definitions.** The following terms used in this chapter shall have the meanings as defined
7193 in Chapter 52, “Administrative Procedures for the Construction Codes,” of the Dallas City Code:
7194

7195 **PREMISES.**
7196

7197 **TENT.**
7198

7199 **SECTION 3903** 7200 **PERMIT REQUIREMENTS FOR TENTS** 7201

7202 **3903.1 Offense.** A person commits an offense if he erects or maintains a *tent* covered by this
7203 chapter without having a valid *tent* permit issued by the *building official*.
7204

7205 **3903.2 Permit required.** A permit is required in accordance with Chapter 52, “Administrative
7206 Procedures for the Construction Codes,” of the Dallas City Code.
7207

7208 **3903.3 Application.** An application is required in accordance with Chapter 52, “Administrative
7209 Procedures for the Construction Codes,” of the Dallas City Code.
7210

7211 **3903.4 Issuance of permit.** The conditions of permit issuance shall be in accordance with Chapter
7212 52, “Administrative Procedures for the Construction Codes,” of the Dallas City Code.
7213

7214 **SECTION 3904** 7215 **USE CONDITIONS** 7216

7217 **3904.1 Compliance with other laws.** The use and placement of a *tent* and all operations within a
7218 *tent* shall comply with all city ordinances and other applicable laws.
7219

7220 **3904.2 Privilege.** The granting of a *tent* permit is a privilege that may be revoked at any time upon
7221 violation of any provision of this chapter.
7222

7223 **3904.3 Other permits.** Electrical permits, plumbing permits, mechanical permits, food
7224 establishment permits, alcoholic beverage licenses and all other permits and licenses required by
7225 city ordinance or other law shall be applied for separately in accordance with the applicable
7226 ordinance or law.
7227

7228 **3904.4 Placement.** Every part of a tent, including guy wires, deadmen, stakes and equipment, shall
7229 be set back a minimum of 10 feet (3048 mm) from all property lines and adjacent buildings and
7230 shall comply with all building lines and minimum yard areas as required by the *Dallas*
7231 *Development Code*.
7232

7233 **Exception:** *Tents* complying with the location provisions of Section 3103.8 of the *Dallas Fire*
7234 *Code* in addition to the requirements of the *Dallas Development Code*.
7235

7236 **3904.5 Lot coverage.** No *tent* may be erected to cover more than 75 percent of the *premises* on

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7237 which it is located.
7238

7239 **3904.6 Structural requirements.** All supporting members shall be of sufficient size and strength
7240 to adequately support the tent. The supporting members shall be guyed and braced to withstand a
7241 wind pressure of not less than 20 pounds per square foot of the projected area of the tent.
7242

7243 **3904.7 Nuisances.** Loud speakers or amplifiers, when used, shall not be used so as to create a
7244 nuisance as described in the city ordinances and other applicable laws.
7245

7246 **3904.8 Electricity.** All electrical wiring shall comply with the Dallas Electrical Code. Each
7247 premises on which a tent is to be erected shall be provided with a separate, individual electrical
7248 service from the power source.
7249

7250 **3904.9 Construction.** Each tent shall be constructed of flame-resistive materials as specified in
7251 the Dallas Fire Code.
7252

7253 **3904.10 Parking.** The number of parking spaces for a tent shall be provided in accordance with
7254 the Dallas Development Code.
7255

7256 **Exception:** A tent that is on the same lot as and is accessory to a main use need not be provided
7257 with additional parking.
7258

SECTION 3905 **EXITS**

7259
7260
7261
7262 **3905.1 General requirements.** Arrangement of seats, aisles, passageways and exits shall conform
7263 to Chapter 10.
7264

7265 **3905.2 Additional requirements.** Every tent shall be provided with exits meeting all of the
7266 following additional provisions contained in this section.
7267

7268 **3905.2.1 Line of travel.** The line of travel to an exit shall not be greater than 100 feet (30 480
7269 mm).
7270

7271 **3905.2.2 Height.** The height of doors, aisles or passageways may be no less than 7 feet (2133.6
7272 mm).
7273

7274 **3905.2.3 Obstructions.** No stakes, guy wires or guy ropes may obstruct an exit way.
7275

7276 **3905.2.4 Exit openings.** Exit openings from any tent shall remain open or may be covered by
7277 canvas, provided:
7278

7279 1. The coverings are free-sliding on a proper support, and the support shall not be less
7280 than 12 inches (304.8 mm) above the top of the opening;

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7281 2. The coverings shall be so arranged that, when open, no part of the coverings obstruct
7282 the opening; and
7283

7284 3. The coverings shall be of a color or colors that definitely contrast with the color of the
7285 tent.
7286

7287 **3905.2.5 Lighting.** Exits, aisles and passageways leading to exits shall be adequately lighted
7288 at all times when the structures are occupied. Artificial light shall be provided whenever natural
7289 light is inadequate.
7290

7291 **3905.2.6 Exit signs.** Signs reading “EXIT” in red letters on a white background or in other
7292 approved distinguishable colors shall adequately indicate exit doorways. Sign letters shall be
7293 at least 6 inches (152.4 mm) high and not less than ¾ inch (19.05 mm) wide. Exit signs shall
7294 be illuminated in tents with occupant loads over 100 persons in the manner specified below:
7295

7296 1. Two separate electrical sources are required for occupant loads over 600.
7297

7298 2. Two separate electrical circuits, one of which shall be separate from other circuits, are
7299 required for occupant loads of 600 or less.
7300

7301 **SECTION 3906**
7302 **CLEARANCE OF PREMISES**
7303

7304 **3906.1 General.** The operator of premises for which a tent permit has been issued shall remove
7305 all structures, materials and debris within two days after the expiration or revocation of a tent
7306 permit.”
7307

7308 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

7309 **171. The 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new Chapter**
7310 **40, “Demolition of Structures,” to read as follows:**

7311 **“CHAPTER 40**
7312 **DEMOLITION OF STRUCTURES**
7313

7314 **SECTION 4001**
7315 **SCOPE**
7316

7317 **4001.1 Scope.** All demolition of structures or portions of structures shall be in accordance with
7318 this chapter.

7319 **SECTION 4002**
7320 **DEFINITIONS**
7321

7322 **4002.1 Definitions.** The following terms used in this chapter shall have the meanings indicated in
7323 this section:

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7324 **CONTRACTOR.** A person, and any employees, engaged in the business of demolition of
7325 structures, who have contracted to demolish a particular structure.
7326

7327 **DEMOLITION.** The destruction of a structure or part of a structure.
7328

7329 **INSECTS.** Include cockroaches, fleas, ticks and bloodsucking insects that transmit disease to
7330 warm-blooded creatures, but excluding subterranean termites.
7331

7332 **SECTION 4003**
7333 **DEMOLITION PERMIT REQUIRED; FEE EXEMPTION**
7334

7335 **4003.1 Permit required.** A person shall not demolish or begin *demolition* of a structure without
7336 obtaining a *demolition* permit from the *building official*.
7337

7338 **4003.2 Fees.** Before being issued a *demolition* permit, the applicant shall pay all applicable fees
7339 required by Section 303 of Administrative Procedure for the Construction Codes of the Dallas City
7340 Code.
7341

7342 **SECTION 4004**
7343 **PERMIT APPLICATION**
7344

7345 **4004.1 General.** Application for a *demolition* permit signed and verified by the owner or owner's
7346 agent shall be made to the *building official* on a form provided for the purpose and shall include
7347 all of the following information:
7348

- 7349 1. Location of the structure to be demolished.
7350
- 7351 2. A plan for *demolition* and a schedule of time to complete the *demolition* project.
7352
- 7353 3. Location of the sites to be used for disposal of debris and proposed routes for transport of
7354 the debris to the sites.
7355
- 7356 4. Name and address of the owner of the structure and the notarized signature of the owner or
7357 the owner's agent authorizing the *contractor* to obtain a permit for *demolition* of the
7358 structure.
7359
- 7360 5. Name and address of the *contractor*.
7361
- 7362 6. Documentary evidence from an insurance company authorized to do business in the State
7363 of Texas, indicating a willingness to provide liability insurance required by Section 4010.
7364
- 7365 7. A statement that the abatement of asbestos hazards will be accomplished in accordance
7366 with guidelines and procedures established by the department of environmental and health
7367 services of the city.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 7368 8. Such additional information as the *building official* considers necessary to promote the
7369 implementation or enforcement of this chapter or the protection of the public safety.
7370

7371 SECTION 4005

7372 REVIEW OF PERMIT APPLICATION; RODENT OR INSECT INFESTATION; 7373 DEMOLITION REVIEW COMMITTEE; SPECIAL CONDITIONS 7374

7375 **4005.1 Rodent or insect infestation.** If the *building official* determines that the structure is
7376 infested with rodents or *insects*, the *building official* shall require the structure to be treated to
7377 eliminate the infestation before issuing a permit.
7378

7379 **4005.2. Review of permit application.** If the *building official* determines from the application
7380 that, because of the scope of the proposed *demolition* project, further review is necessary, the
7381 *building official* may call a meeting of the *demolition* review committee. The *building official* shall
7382 give the committee members, the owner of the property and the *contractor* at least three days'
7383 written notice of the meeting unless the *contractor* requests an earlier meeting.
7384

7385 **4005.3 Demolition review committee.** The *demolition* review committee is composed of the
7386 *building official* as chair and the directors or designated representatives from the following city
7387 departments:
7388

- 7389 1. Department of code compliance.
7390
7391 2. Department of sanitation services.
7392
7393 3. Fire department.
7394
7395 4. Mobility and Street Services Department or its equivalent.
7396
7397 5. Office of Environmental Quality.
7398
7399 6. Police department.
7400

7401 **4005.4 Hearing.** The *contractor* and the owner, or the owner's representative other than the
7402 *contractor*, shall attend the meeting of the *demolition* review committee and explain in detail the
7403 methods and procedures to be used in the proposed *demolition* project.
7404

7405 **4005.5 Special conditions.** After reviewing the application and hearing the presentation of the
7406 *contractor*, the *demolition* review committee shall determine if, for the protection of the public
7407 safety, any special conditions need to be required for the issuance of a permit. At the conclusion
7408 of the meeting, the special conditions, if any, shall be listed and recorded so that they may be made
7409 a part of the permit.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

SECTION 4006

PERMIT ISSUANCE; APPEAL OF DENIAL

7410
7411
7412
7413 **4006.1 Issuance of permit.** The *building official* shall issue a *demolition* permit to the applicant,
7414 incorporating any special conditions as part of the permit, if the *building official* determines that:
7415

- 7416 1. The applicant has complied with the requirements of Sections 4003, 4004 and 4005;
7417
7418 2. The applicant has submitted proof of the insurance coverage required by Section 4010;
7419
7420 3. The methods and procedures to be used by the applicant will comply with the requirements
7421 of this chapter and will not present a hazard to the public; and
7422
7423 4. The applicant has agreed to comply with the special conditions, if any, determined to be
7424 necessary by the *demolition* review committee.
7425

7426 **4006.2 Appeal of denial.** If the *building official* denies issuance of a permit, the applicant may
7427 appeal the action to the Building Inspection Advisory, Examining and Appeals board under
7428 procedures established in Chapter 52, Administrative Procedures for the Construction Codes, of
7429 the *Dallas City Code* for appeals to that board.
7430

SECTION 4007

TRANSFERABILITY; COMMENCEMENT OF WORK; CONTINUATION OF WORK; DURATION OF PERMIT; EXTENSION

7431
7432
7433
7434
7435 **4007.1 Transferability.** A *demolition* permit is not transferable to another.
7436

7437 **4007.2 Commencement of work.** A *contractor* or owner shall begin *demolition* work authorized
7438 by a permit within 10 working days from the date the permit is issued, otherwise the permit expires
7439 and the *contractor* or owner must apply for a new permit.
7440

7441 **Exception:** The time limit in the contract applies for a *contractor* who demolishes a structure
7442 under contract with the city.
7443

7444 **4007.2 Continuation of work.** After beginning a *demolition* project, a *contractor* or owner shall
7445 work continuously at the normal rate of progress in keeping with good *demolition* practices until
7446 the project is completed.
7447

7448 **4007.3[4] Expiration of permit to demolish smaller structures.** A permit issued for *demolition*
7449 of a structure of less than 500 square feet (46.45 m²) or a single-family or duplex dwelling expires
7450 two years [30 days] after the date of issuance if no progress has been made toward completion of
7451 the *demolition*, and *demolition* work authorized by the permit, including cleanup, shall be
7452 completed within the 30 days of the date *demolition* commences.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7453 **4007.4[5] Expiration of permit to demolish larger structures.** A permit issued for *demolition*
7454 of a structure other than a structure described in Section 4007.3 [4007.4] expires two years [~~60~~
7455 ~~days~~] after the date of issuance if no progress has been made toward completion of the *demolition*
7456 unless a longer period of time is granted in the permit as a special condition approved by the
7457 *demolition review committee*. *Demolition* work, including cleanup, authorized by the permit shall
7458 be completed within 60 days of the date *demolition* commences or within the time stated in the
7459 special condition.
7460

7461 **4007.5[6] Extensions of permit.** The *building official* may grant an extension of a *demolition*
7462 permit if the *contractor* or owner shows good cause for not completing the project within the
7463 required time.
7464

SECTION 4008 **OTHER PERMITS**

7465
7466
7467
7468 **4008.1 General.** Issuance of a *demolition* permit does not authorize an activity which requires
7469 another permit, as illustrated by, but not limited to, welding, cutting with a torch, construction of
7470 pedestrian protections and hauling of debris. The requirement of other permits may be discussed
7471 with the *contractor* at the *demolition review meeting*.
7472

SECTION 4009 **COST FOR CHANGES IN PUBLIC PROPERTY; EQUIPMENT OR UTILITIES**

7473
7474
7475
7476 **4009.1 General.** The owner of property to be demolished is responsible for the cost of changes in
7477 public property, equipment or utilities, including, but not limited to, damage caused by the
7478 *demolition* activity, removal and reinstallation if damage cannot be avoided, and temporary
7479 equipment or utilities if determined to be necessary by the *building official* or the *demolition review*
7480 *committee*.
7481

SECTION 4010 **INSURANCE; INDEMNIFICATION**

7482
7483
7484
7485 **4010.1 Insurance required.** An applicant for a *demolition* permit shall procure and keep in full
7486 force and effect commercial general liability insurance and comprehensive automobile liability
7487 insurance written by an insurance company approved by the State of Texas and acceptable to the
7488 city and issued in the standard form approved by the Texas Department of Insurance. All
7489 provisions of the policy shall be acceptable to the city. The insured provisions of the policy shall
7490 name the city and its officers and employees as additional insureds.
7491

7492 **Exception:** Insurance is not required if the structure to be demolished is less than 500 square
7493 feet (46.45 m²) in area, and the *demolition* will not affect public property.
7494

7495 **4010.1.1 Coverage requirements.** The following coverage types and limits shall be
7496 maintained at all times during the term of the *demolition* permit:

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 7497 1. The commercial general liability insurance shall provide combined single limits of
7498 liability for bodily injury and property damage of not less than \$1,000,000 for each
7499 occurrence, or the equivalent, and include coverage for premises operations, asbestos
7500 hazards (if the project involves asbestos), independent *contractors*, products/completed
7501 operations, personal injury, contractual liability and medical payments. This insurance
7502 shall also include coverage for underground, explosion and collapse hazards.
7503
- 7504 2. The comprehensive automobile liability insurance shall provide combined single limits
7505 of liability for bodily injury and property damage of not less than \$500,000 for each
7506 occurrence, or the equivalent, for each motor vehicle used by the permittee.
7507

7508 **Exception:** If the *building official* or the *demolition* review committee determines that
7509 public property will not be affected by the project and the scope of the project is not
7510 sufficient to require the insurance limits established in Section 4010.1.1, the *building*
7511 *official* or the *demolition* review committee, on recommendation of the office of risk
7512 management, may lower the limits required for a particular permit and include the lower
7513 limits as a special condition incorporated into the permit.
7514

7515 **4010.1.2 Cancellation provisions.** Each insurance policy shall include a cancellation
7516 provision in which the insurance company is required to notify the *building official* in writing
7517 not fewer than 30 days before canceling, failing to renew or making a material change to the
7518 insurance policy.
7519

7520 **4010.2 Indemnification required.** A permittee shall execute a written agreement to indemnify
7521 the city and its officers and employees against all claims of injury or damage to persons or property
7522 arising out of *demolition* activities by the permittee that affect public property.
7523

SECTION 4011 DEMOLITION BY CITY

7524 **4011.1 Inapplicability of certain requirements.** Sections 4007, 4009 and 4010 do not apply to
7528 *demolition* work conducted by city employees in the course of their city employment.
7529

SECTION 4012 PREPARATION OF THE DEMOLITION SITE

7530 **4012.1 Site preparation requirements.** A *contractor* shall not begin *demolition* work until all of
7534 the following preparations have been made:
7535

- 7536 1. Relocate gas, water, steam, storm and sanitary sewer lines that will be used during the
7537 *demolition* process and construct devices to protect the relocated lines.
7538
- 7539 2. Shut off and cap accessible gas, water, steam, storm and sanitary sewer lines not required
7540 during *demolition* outside the building line and shut off other lines as they become
7541 accessible.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7542 3. Reduce electrical service connections to a minimum needed for the *demolition* work and
7543 relocate and protect needed lines.
7544

7545 4. Disconnect unneeded electrical service lines outside the property line and conspicuously
7546 identify energized circuits.
7547

7548 **4012.2 Notification to utility agencies.** A contractor shall notify the appropriate utility agency
7549 before making the preparations required in Section 4012.1 and shall accomplish the disconnections
7550 and construction of protective devices in a manner approved by that agency.
7551

7552 **SECTION 4013** 7553 **PROTECTIVE DEVICES** 7554

7555 **4013.1 Protective devices.** A contractor shall not begin *demolition* of the exterior walls or roof
7556 of a structure until the following protective devices have been constructed when required by the
7557 *demolition* review committee:
7558

7559 1. A walkway or pedestrian protection in compliance with Section 3306; and
7560

7561 2. A structure to protect public property and utilities, as illustrated by, but not limited to, fire
7562 hydrants, street lights, signal lights and control boxes, parking meters, utility lines and
7563 poles, and traffic signs.
7564

7565 **4013.2 Fencing and security.** If the *demolition* review committee determines it is necessary, a
7566 special condition to the permit may require a fence enclosing the *demolition* site and a security
7567 guard to be kept on duty 24 hours a day.
7568

7569 **4013.3 Maintenance and removal of protective devices.** A contractor shall maintain the
7570 required protective devices so long as a hazard to persons or property exists and shall remove the
7571 devices immediately when they are no longer needed for protection.
7572

7573 **4013.4 Means of egress.** A party wall balcony or horizontal exit shall not be destroyed unless and
7574 until a substitute means of egress has been provided and approved.
7575

7576 **4013.5 Water accumulation.** Provision shall be made to prevent the accumulation of water or
7577 damage to any foundations on the premises or the adjoining property.
7578

7579 **SECTION 4014** 7580 **WARNING SIGNS AND BARRICADES** 7581

7582 **4014.1 General requirements.** A contractor, when required by the *demolition* review committee,
7583 shall prominently erect and maintain, while the *demolition* is in progress, signs and barricades
7584 which comply with the city's traffic barricade manual and warn members of the public of the
7585 hazards that exist as a result of the *demolition* work.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

SECTION 4015 LIGHTS

7586
7587
7588
7589 **4015.1 General requirements.** A contractor shall provide lights between sunset and sunrise that
7590 illuminate hazards near or upon sidewalks or streets, as illustrated by, but not limited to, pits,
7591 excavations, fences, barriers, equipment, building material or rubbish.
7592

7593 **4015.2 Pedestrian passageways.** In pedestrian passageways, a contractor shall provide:
7594

- 7595 1. Amber lights with a capacity of at least 100 watts on the street side of the walkway at both
7596 ends and near the center; and
7597
7598 2. Sixty-watt lights spaced every 10 feet (3048 mm) along an open walkway and along the
7599 inside and outside of a covered pedestrian way.
7600

SECTION 4016 DUST AND DRAINAGE

7601
7602
7603
7604 **4016.1 Dust.** In order to control dust in the air, a contractor shall do the following:
7605

- 7606 1. Maintain an adequate water supply on the demolition site to properly control dust.
7607
7608 2. Wet down material sufficiently to lay the dust before the material is removed.
7609
7610 3. Remove asbestos in accordance with applicable city, state and federal laws and regulations.
7611

7612 **4016.2 Drainage.** A contractor shall maintain the drainage facilities so that storm water and water
7613 used for controlling dust will not cause flooding of streets, sewers or other property.
7614

SECTION 4017 HOURS OF OPERATION

7615
7616
7617
7618 **4017.1 Residential areas.** A contractor shall conduct demolition activity on a structure in or
7619 adjacent to a residential area only during the days and hours specified in Chapter 30, "Noise," of
7620 the Dallas City Code.
7621

7622 **4017.2 Nonresidential areas.** The building official or the demolition review committee shall
7623 establish the hours of operation at demolition sites not in or adjacent to a residential area to
7624 minimize the effect of noise and the interference with normal movement of pedestrians and
7625 vehicular traffic. The established hours of operation will be incorporated as a special condition of
7626 the permit.
7627

SECTION 4018 METHODS OF DEMOLITION

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7630 **4018.1 General method.** In conducting *demolition* activities, a *contractor* shall do the following:
7631

7632 1. Demolish exterior walls and floor construction beginning at the top of the structure and
7633 proceeding downward, except that holes may be cut in floors through which to drop
7634 materials if precautions are taken so that dropped materials are contained and dust is
7635 controlled.
7636

7637 2. Completely demolish each story of exterior wall and floor construction and dispose of all
7638 materials and debris by moving to a storage space before beginning removal of walls and
7639 floors in the next story below.
7640

7641 3. Floor over or enclose with guardrails and toe boards all floor openings and shafts not used
7642 for material chutes.
7643

7644 4. During the *demolition* of a structure that is originally more than 70 feet (21 336 mm) high
7645 and that is in proximity to property lines, provide scatterboards not more than two stories
7646 below the story being removed. These scatterboards shall:
7647

7648 4.1. project from the exterior of the structure not less than 6 feet (1828.8 mm);

7649
7650 4.2. be designed for a live load of 100 pounds per square foot (488.24 kg/m²) for a
7651 distance of 5 feet (1524 mm) from the wall line;
7652

7653 4.3. be floored with at least 2-inch (50.8 mm) thick plank, laid tight and secured; and

7654
7655 4.4. have solid plank guardrails 3 feet (914.4 mm) in height, rigidly braced and secured
7656 on the outer edge and ends.
7657

7658 5. Reduce all improvements to their component parts and demolish all improvements to
7659 ground level, including, but not limited to, foundations, porches, walks, driveways, slabs
7660 and steps which have elements above grade.
7661

7662 **4018.2 Other methods.** If a *contractor* desires to use a method other than that required in Section
7663 4018.1, as illustrated by, but not limited to, *demolition* of a structure in sections, use of explosives,
7664 or use of “headache balls,” the proposed method must be approved by the *building official* or the
7665 *demolition* review committee to ensure the safety of persons and property, with appropriate special
7666 conditions incorporated in the permit.
7667

7668 **SECTION 4019** 7669 **DROPPING OF MATERIAL** 7670

7671 **4019.1 General requirements.** A *contractor* shall not drop material by gravity to a point outside
7672 the exterior walls of a structure unless the material is dropped through an enclosed wooden or
7673 metal chute.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7674 **Exceptions:** This restriction does not apply to the following:
7675

- 7676 1. A single-family dwelling and its accessory structures.
7677
- 7678 2. A structure whose height is less than the distance from the building line to the nearest
7679 property line or public sidewalk.
7680

7681 **SECTION 4020** 7682 **FIRE PROTECTION** 7683

7684 **4020.1 General requirements.** For requirements governing fire protection at a *demolition* site,
7685 see the *Dallas Fire Code*.
7686

7687 **SECTION 4021** 7688 **REMOVAL OF MATERIAL** 7689

7690 **4021.1 General requirements.** A contractor shall remove all material, rubbish and debris at least
7691 once each day from the *demolition* site in accordance with applicable city, state and federal laws
7692 and regulations, and in accordance with the routes, disposal sites and precautions established by
7693 the *building official* or the *demolition* review committee, taking care to maintain adjacent streets,
7694 alleys and public ways clear of loose material.
7695

7696 **SECTION 4022** 7697 **CONDITION OF THE DEMOLITION SITE** 7698

7699 **4022.1 Site condition upon completion of demolition.** Upon completion of a *demolition* project,
7700 a *contractor* shall:
7701

- 7702 1. Leave the *demolition* site blade clean; and
7703
- 7704 2. Fill, level, compact and smooth basements, cellars, wells, cisterns, excavations, holes,
7705 voids under public or private sidewalks, or any declivity or depression that extends below
7706 the grade of the lot and is an apparent consequence of the *demolition*.
7707

7708 **Exception:** A contractor is not required to fill, level, compact and smooth the *demolition*
7709 site if a building permit has been issued for new construction on the site, to begin within
7710 60 days of completion of the *demolition* project.
7711

7712 **4022.2 Inert material as fill.** Inert material may be used as fill if the top 1 foot (304.8 mm) of fill
7713 is clean earth.
7714

7715 **4022.3 Shrubbery and trees.** Living shrubbery and trees are not required to be removed from the
7716 site.”

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7717 Carryover Dallas Amendment

7718 172. The 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new Chapter

7719 41, “Building Security,” to read as follows:

7720
7721
7722

“CHAPTER 41 BUILDING SECURITY”

7723
7724
7725

SECTION 4100 PURPOSE

7726 **4100.1 General.** The purpose of this chapter is to establish minimum standards to make dwelling
7727 units resistant to unlawful entry.

7728

7729
7730
7731

SECTION 4101 SCOPE

7732 **4101.1 General.** The provisions of this chapter apply to the following openings:

7733

7734
7735

1. Openings into dwellings within apartment houses of Group R, Division 2 Occupancies.

7736
7737

2. Openings into a dwelling and dwelling units of Group R, Division 3 Occupancies.

7738
7739

3. Openings between attached garages and the dwelling units.

7740
7741

4. Openings into attached garages.

7742
7743

Exceptions:

7744
7745
7746
7747
7748

1. An opening in an exterior wall when all portions of the opening are more than 12 feet (3656.6 mm) vertically or 6 feet (1826.8 mm) horizontally from an accessible surface of any adjoining yard, court, passageway, public way, walk, breezeway, patio, planter, porch or similar area.

7749
7750
7751
7752
7753

2. All openings in an exterior wall when all portions of the opening are more than 12 feet (3656.6 mm) vertically or 6 feet (1826.8 mm) horizontally from the surface of any adjoining roof, balcony landing, stair tread, platform or similar structure, or when any portion of such surface is more than 12 feet (3656.6 mm) above an accessible surface.

7754
7755
7756

3. All openings in a roof when all portions of such roof are more than 12 feet (3656.6 mm) above an accessible surface.

7757
7758
7759

4. An opening where the smaller dimension is 6 inches (152.4 mm) or less, provided that the closest edge of the opening is at least 40 inches (1016 mm) from the locking device of a door.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 7760 5. An opening protected by required fire door assemblies having a fire-endurance rating
7761 of not less than 45 minutes.
7762

7763 SECTION 4102

7764 OBSTRUCTING MEANS OF EGRESS

7765

7766 **4102.1 General.** Security methods shall not create a hazard to life by obstructing any means of
7767 egress or any opening that is classified as an emergency exiting facility. Security provisions
7768 contained in this chapter do not supersede or waive the safety provisions relative to latching or
7769 locking devices on means of egress doors or egress windows required by any other provision of
7770 this code.
7771

7772 **4102.2 Emergency escape or rescue windows.** Bars, grilles, grates or similar security or
7773 secondary locking devices may be installed on emergency escape or rescue windows or doors
7774 required by Section 1031 of this code and Section R310 of the *Dallas One- and Two-Family*
7775 *Dwelling Code*, provided the following:
7776

- 7777 1. Such devices are equipped with approved release mechanisms that are operable from the
7778 inside without the use of a key or special knowledge or effort.
7779
- 7780 2. The building is equipped with smoke detectors installed in accordance with Section 907.2,
7781 1103.7 and 1103.8 of the *Dallas Fire Code* and Section R314 of the *Dallas One- and Two-*
7782 *Family Dwelling Code*.
7783

7784 SECTION 4113

7785 ENTRY VISION

7786

7787 **4103.1 Vision required.** All main or front entry doors to dwelling units shall be arranged so that
7788 the occupant has a view of the area immediately outside the door without opening the door. Except
7789 as provided in Section 716.2.2.1, the view may be provided by a door viewer having a field of
7790 view of not less than 180 degrees or through a window or view port.
7791

7792 **4103.2 Glazing separation.** Breakable glass should not be installed within 40 inches (1016 mm)
7793 of a door-locking device.
7794

7795 Exceptions:

7796

- 7797 1. For required means of egress doors and emergency escape or rescue doors, glazing may
7798 be installed within 40 inches (1016 mm) of the locking device if the glass is laminated,
7799 patterned, wired, obscured or protected by approved bars, grilles or grates.
7800
- 7801 2. For other doors, glazing may be installed within 40 inches (1016 mm) of a locking
7802 device that is key-opened from both the inside and the outside.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

SECTION 4104 SWINGING DOORS

4104.1 General. Swinging doors regulated by this chapter shall comply with the following:

1. Wood doors shall be solid core and not less than 1³/₈-inches (34.92 mm) thick.
2. Double doors shall have the inactive leaf secured by header and threshold bolts that penetrate metal strike plates. The bolts shall be flush-mounted in the door edge whenever breakable glass is located within 40 inches (1016 mm) of the bolts.
3. Dutch doors shall have concealed flush-bolt locking devices to interlock the upper and lower halves.

4104.2 Strike plate installations. In wood-frame construction, any open space between trimmers and wood doorjamb shall be solid-shimmed by a single piece extending not less than 6 inches (152.4 mm) above and below the strike plate.

Strike plates shall be attached to wood with not less than two No. 8 by 2-inch (50.8 mm) screws. Strike plates when attached to metal shall be attached with not less than two No. 8 machine screws.

4104.3 Hinges. Hinges that are exposed to the exterior shall be equipped with nonremovable hinge pins or a mechanical interlock to preclude removal of the door from the exterior by removing the hinge pins.

4104.4 Locking hardware. Single swinging doors and the active leaf of double doors shall be equipped with an approved exterior key-operated dead bolt which shall lock with a minimum bolt throw of 1 inch (25.4 mm) through a metal strike plate. When mounted on an exit door or a required emergency escape or rescue door, the dead bolt lock shall be operable from the inside without the use of a key or any special knowledge or effort. See Chapter 10 for other exit door requirements.

SECTION 4105 WINDOWS AND SLIDING DOORS

4105.1 General requirements. When regulated by this chapter, openable windows and sliding door assemblies shall be secured by a primary lock or sash operator and by either of the following:

1. A secondary locking device consisting of screws, dowels, pinning devices or key-operated locks designed to prevent opening by lifting or prying.
2. Approved bars, grilles or grates.

Jalousie or louvered windows do not comply with this section unless protected with approved bars, grilles or grates. Installation of secondary locking devices or bars, grilles or grates on required

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7847 emergency escape windows or doors shall comply with Section 1030.4.
7848

7849 SECTION 4106 7850 GARAGE DOORS 7851

7852 4106.1 General requirements. Vehicle access doors in enclosed attached garages shall be
7853 equipped with a security device or locking devices.
7854

7855 SECTION 4107 7856 ALTERNATE MATERIALS OR METHODS 7857

7858 4107.1 General. The provisions of this chapter are not intended to prevent the use of any material,
7859 device, hardware or method not specifically prescribed in this chapter, when such alternate
7860 provides equivalent security and is approved by the *building official*.”

7861 Carryover Dallas Amendment

7862 **173. The 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new Chapter**
7863 **42, “Unity Agreements and the Dissolution of Common Boundary Lines for Building Code**
7864 **Purposes,” to read as follows:**

7865 “CHAPTER 42 7866 UNITY AGREEMENTS AND THE DISSOLUTION OF COMMON 7867 BOUNDARY LINES FOR BUILDING CODE PURPOSES 7868

7869 SECTION 4201 7870 AUTHORIZATION AND REQUIREMENTS FOR UNITY AGREEMENTS 7871

7872 4201.1 Authorization. The *building official* may authorize the use of a unity agreement between
7873 two or more building sites to include the reservation of additional *yard* space on an adjacent Building
7874 Site for purposes of this code if a written agreement is executed in accordance with this section on
7875 a form provided by the city.
7876

7877 **Exception:** The *building official* may authorize the use of a unity agreement for purposes of this
7878 code without the execution of a written unity agreement when the city is an owner or lessee of
7879 all of the property involved.
7880

7881 4201.1.1 Creation of a building site. The unity agreement may not be used to create a building
7882 site nor as a substitute for platting or replatting as required by the *Dallas Development Code*.
7883 This agreement shall not be used to allow buildings or portions thereof to encroach across the
7884 property line nor into the adjacent lot.
7885

7886 4201.1.2 Newly created building site and existing buildings. Property lines cannot be
7887 created unless the structures are compliant or will be made compliant with the requirements of
7888 this code following the permit requirements of Chapter 52, “Administrative Procedures for the

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7889 Construction Codes,” of the *Dallas City Code*. A property line proposed through an existing
7890 building must result in functionally independent structures on each side of the property line.
7891 This includes structural load paths as well as all other requirements of this code including exits
7892 and restrooms.
7893

7894 **4201.1.3 Single-family uses.** A site inspection is required prior to the submission of the unity
7895 agreement for the building official’s signature. The inspection must verify the existence of the
7896 designated minimum yard on the adjacent lot.”
7897

7898 **4201.2 Requirements.** A unity agreement shall meet all of the following requirements:
7899

- 7900 1. Contain legal descriptions of the properties sharing the common boundary lines.
7901
- 7902 2. Set forth adequate consideration between the parties.
7903
- 7904 3. State that all parties agree that the properties sharing the common boundary lines may be
7905 collectively treated as one lot for the limited purpose of meeting requirements of this code.
7906
- 7907 4. State that the reservation of additional yard space on an adjacent Building Site described
7908 in the agreement is only for the limited purpose of meeting requirements of this code, and
7909 that actual lot lines of the Building Sites are not affected.
7910
- 7911 5. State that the agreement constitutes a covenant running with the land with respect to all
7912 properties sharing the common boundary lines. A maximum of two lots may be used per
7913 agreement.
7914
- 7915 6. State that all parties agree to defend, indemnify, and hold harmless the city of Dallas from
7916 and against all claims or liabilities arising out of or in connection with the agreement.
7917
- 7918 7. State that the agreement will be governed by the laws of the State of Texas.
7919
- 7920 8. State that the agreement may only be amended or terminated in accordance with Section
7921 4202.
7922
- 7923 9. Be approved by the *building official* and be approved as to form by the city attorney.
7924
- 7925 10. Be signed by all owners of the properties sharing the common boundary lines.
7926
- 7927 11. Be signed by all lienholders, other than taxing entities, that have either an interest in the
7928 properties sharing the common boundary lines or an improvement on those properties.
7929
- 7930 12. Be filed and made a part of the deed records of the county or counties in which the
7931 properties are located.
7932

7933 **4201.3 Filing requirements.** A unity agreement is not effective until a true and correct copy of

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7934 the approved agreement is filed in the deed records in accordance with Section 4201.2(12), a file-
7935 marked copy of the agreement(s) for each property sharing the common boundary line is filed with
7936 the *building official*, and the fees are paid in accordance with this section.
7937

7938 **4201.3.1 Fees.** An application for a unity agreement and the amendment or termination of an
7939 existing unity agreement will not be processed until the fee(s) have been paid in accordance
7940 with Section 303 of Chapter 52, “Administrative Procedures for the Construction Codes,” of
7941 the *Dallas City Code*.
7942

7943 **SECTION 4202**

7944 **AMENDMENT OR TERMINATION OF UNITY AGREEMENTS**

7945

7946 **4202.1 Requirements.** A unity agreement may only be amended or terminated by a written
7947 instrument that is executed in accordance with this section on a form provided by the city. The
7948 instrument shall meet all of the following requirements:
7949

- 7950 1. Be signed by an owner of property sharing the common boundary lines or by a lienholder,
7951 other than a taxing entity, that has either an interest in a property sharing the common
7952 boundary lines or an improvement on such a property.
7953
- 7954 2. Be approved by the *building official*.
7955
- 7956 3. Be approved as to form by the city attorney.
7957
- 7958 4. Be filed and made a part of the deed records of the county or counties in which the
7959 properties are located.
7960

7961 **4202.2 Approval by building official.** The *building official* shall approve an instrument amending
7962 or terminating an agreement if all properties governed by the agreement fully comply with this
7963 code. The amending or terminating instrument is not effective until it is filed in the deed records in
7964 accordance with Section 4201.3 and a file-marked copy of the agreement(s) for each of the
7965 properties is filed with the *building official*.”
7966

7967 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

7968 **174. The 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new Chapter**

7969 **43, “Green Building Program,” to read as follows:**

7970 **“CHAPTER 43**

7971 **GREEN BUILDING PROGRAM**

7972

7973 **SECTION 4301**

7974 **PURPOSE**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7975 **4301.1 Purpose.** The purpose of this chapter is to establish green building standards to help reduce
7976 the use of natural resources, create a healthier and more sustainable living environment and
7977 minimize the negative environmental impacts of development in Dallas and the North Texas
7978 region.
7979

7980 **SECTION 4302** 7981 **DEFINITIONS** 7982

7983 **4302.1 Definitions.** The following terms used in this chapter shall have the meanings indicated in
7984 this section:
7985

7986 **GREEN BUILDING.** Structures and their surrounding landscapes designed, constructed and
7987 maintained to decrease energy and water usage and costs, to improve the efficiency and longevity
7988 of building systems and to decrease the burdens imposed on the environment and public health.
7989

7990 **GREEN BUILT TEXAS.** An initiative of the Homebuilders Association of Greater Dallas that
7991 provides climate-specific guidelines and verification systems for residential and multifamily *green*
7992 *buildings.*
7993

7994 **GREEN BUILT TEXAS-CERTIFIABLE.** A proposed project that is not required to be
7995 registered with the Home Builders Association of Greater Dallas, but is planned, designed and
7996 constructed to meet or exceed a certified rating using the most recent version of the *Green Built*
7997 *Texas* rating system.
7998

7999 **LEED.** The Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design *green building* rating systems are
8000 nationally accepted standards for *green buildings* developed by the *USGBC.*
8001

8002 **LEED-CERTIFIABLE.** A proposed project that is not required to be registered with the *USGBC,*
8003 but is planned, designed and constructed to meet or exceed a certified rating using the most recent
8004 version of LEED NC (new construction), LEED CS (core and shell), LEED CI (commercial
8005 interiors), LEED for schools, LEED for healthcare, LEED for retail or LEED for homes.
8006

8007 **PROPOSED PROJECT.** The erection of any new structure for which a person, firm or
8008 corporation is required to obtain a building permit.
8009

8010 **USGBC.** The U.S. Green Building Council, a nonprofit organization comprised of leaders from
8011 the building industry formed to encourage sustainability by promoting buildings that are
8012 environmentally responsible, profitable and healthy places to live and work.
8013

8014 **SECTION 4303** 8015 **REQUIREMENTS** 8016

8017 **4303.1 General.** This section applies to all *proposed projects.*
8018

8019 **4303.2 All new construction.** All *proposed projects* must:

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

8020 1. meet the minimum requirements of the *Dallas Green Construction Code*;
8021

8022 2. be *LEED-certifiable*;
8023

8024 3. be *Green Built Texas-certifiable*; or
8025

8026 4. be certifiable under an equivalent *green building* standard.
8027

8028 **4303.2.1 Formal certification not required.** Formal certification by the *USGBC, Green Built*
8029 *Texas* or an equivalent entity is not required.
8030

8031 **4303.2.2 LEED projects.**
8032

8033 1. Each *proposed project* may apply for compliance under any of the following *LEED*
8034 *rating system products: LEED NC (new construction), LEED for schools, LEED for*
8035 *retail, LEED for healthcare, LEED CS (core and shell) or LEED for homes.*
8036

8037 2. *Proposed projects* must achieve 1 point under the water efficiency credit titled “*Water*
8038 *Use Reduction (20% Reduction).*
8039

8040 **4303.2.3 Multifamily developments.** Multifamily developments have the option of using
8041 *LEED NC, LEED for homes, Green Built Texas, ICC 700* or an equivalent *green building*
8042 *standard.*
8043

8044 **4303.3 Water use.** *Proposed projects* must reduce water usage by 20 percent. This may be
8045 *accomplished by:*
8046

8047 1. using the water efficiency requirements of *Green Built Texas, LEED NC, LEED CS, LEED*
8048 *CI, LEED for schools, LEED for healthcare or LEED for retail; or*
8049

8050 2. using 20 percent less water than the water use baseline calculated for the building’s total
8051 *interior water fixture use as required by the Dallas Plumbing Code.”*
8052

8053 175. **Appendices A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O of the 2021 International**
8054 **Building Code are not adopted.**

8055 176. All chapters of the **2021** International Building Code adopted by this ordinance are
8056 subchapters of Chapter 53 of the Dallas City Code, as amended.

8057 177. All references in the **2021** International Building Code to the fire code, plumbing
8058 code, mechanical code, electrical code, residential code, existing building code, energy
8059

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

8060 conservation code, fuel gas code, and green construction code refer, respectively, to Chapters 16,
8061 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, and 61 of the Dallas City Code.

8062 SECTION 2. Any errata corrections of the **2021** International Building Code published by
8063 the International Code Council are considered as part of this code.

8064 SECTION 3. That a person violating a provision of this ordinance, upon conviction, is
8065 punishable by a fine not to exceed \$2,000. No offense committed and no liability, penalty, or
8066 forfeiture, either civil or criminal, incurred prior to the effective date of this ordinance will be
8067 discharged or affected by this ordinance. Prosecutions and suits for such offenses, liabilities,
8068 penalties, and forfeitures may be instituted, and causes of action pending on the effective date of
8069 this ordinance may proceed, as if the former laws applicable at the time the offense, liability,
8070 penalty, or forfeiture was committed or incurred had not been amended, repealed, reenacted, or
8071 superseded, and all former laws will continue in effect for these purposes.

8072 SECTION 4. That Chapter 53 of the Dallas City Code, as amended, will remain in full
8073 force and effect, save and except as amended by this ordinance. Any existing structure, system,
8074 development project, or registration that is not required to come into compliance with a
8075 requirement of this ordinance will be governed by the requirement as it existed in the former law
8076 last applicable to the structure, system, development project, or registration, and all former laws
8077 will continue in effect for this purpose.

8078 SECTION 5. That the terms and provisions of this ordinance are severable and are
8079 governed by Section 1-4 of Chapter 1 of the Dallas City Code, as amended.

8080 SECTION 6. That this ordinance will take effect on **[DATE]**, and it is accordingly so
8081 ordained.

8082 APPROVED AS TO FORM:

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

8083 [NAME], City Attorney

8084

8085 By _____

8086 Assistant City Attorney

8087

8088

8089 Passed _____